XTC™ Transmitters

Series 340 Pressure Transmitter-Controllers
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION AND TITLE</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.0 INTRODUCTION</strong></td>
<td><strong>1-1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 SECTION CONTENTS</td>
<td>1-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 PRODUCT DESCRIPTION</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 CONFIGURATION</td>
<td>1-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 PRODUCT SUPPORT</td>
<td>1-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2.0 MODEL 275 UNIVERSAL HART COMMUNICATOR</strong></td>
<td><strong>2-1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>2-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 COMMUNICATOR CONNECTIONS</td>
<td>2-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 CONTROLS OVERVIEW</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.1 Liquid Crystal Display</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.2 Software-Defined Function Keys</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.3 Action Keys</td>
<td>2-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.4 Alphanumeric and Shift Keys</td>
<td>2-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.4.1 Rapid Selection of Menu Options</td>
<td>2-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.4.2 Data Entry</td>
<td>2-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4 GETTING TO KNOW THE COMMUNICATOR</td>
<td>2-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.1 Display Icons</td>
<td>2-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.2 Menu Structure</td>
<td>2-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.3 Reviewing Installed Devices</td>
<td>2-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5 MAIN MENU</td>
<td>2-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.1 Offline Menu</td>
<td>2-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.1.1 New Configuration</td>
<td>2-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.1.2 Saved Configuration</td>
<td>2-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.2 Online Menu</td>
<td>2-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.3 Frequency Device Menu</td>
<td>2-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.4 Utility Menu</td>
<td>2-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.4.1 Configure Communicator</td>
<td>2-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.4.2 System Information</td>
<td>2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.4.3 Listen for PC</td>
<td>2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.4.4 Storage Location</td>
<td>2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.4.5 Simulation</td>
<td>2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6 USING THE QUICK ACCESS KEY</td>
<td>2-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6.1 Adding Quick Access Key Options</td>
<td>2-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6.2 Deleting Quick Access Key Options</td>
<td>2-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.0 COMMISSIONING AND BENCH TESTING</strong></td>
<td><strong>3-1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 COMMISSIONING PROCEDURE</td>
<td>3-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1 Test Equipment Needed</td>
<td>3-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 ESTABLISHING COMMUNICATION</td>
<td>3-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 TESTING THE TRANSMITTER</td>
<td>3-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 REVIEWING CONFIGURATION DATA</td>
<td>3-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5 CHECKING TRANSMITTER OUTPUT</td>
<td>3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.0 INSTALLATION</strong></td>
<td><strong>4-1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1 EQUIPMENT DELIVERY AND HANDLING</td>
<td>4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.1 Factory Shipment</td>
<td>4-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.2 Receipt of Shipment</td>
<td>4-1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS

4.1.3 Storage .................................................................................................................. 4-1
4.2 ENVIRONMENTAL CONSIDERATIONS ................................................................. 4-1
4.3 INSTALLATION CONSIDERATIONS ........................................................................ 4-2
  4.3.1 Mechanical ........................................................................................................... 4-2
  4.3.2 Electrical .............................................................................................................. 4-3
  4.3.3 Impulse Piping for Models 340D, A, and G ......................................................... 4-4
  4.3.4 Transmitter Operating Mode and Network Type ................................................... 4-10
    4.3.4.1 Analog Mode .................................................................................................. 4-10
    4.3.4.2 Digital Mode ................................................................................................. 4-14
  4.3.5 Power Supply Requirements .................................................................................. 4-14
    4.3.5.1 Point-to-Point Network ............................................................................... 4-16
    4.3.5.2 Multi-Drop Network ..................................................................................... 4-16
  4.3.6 Cable Capacitance and Maximum Length ............................................................ 4-17
    4.3.6.1 Cable Capacitance ....................................................................................... 4-17
    4.3.6.2 Maximum Cable Length Calculation ............................................................ 4-17
  4.3.7 Network Junctions .............................................................................................. 4-18
  4.3.8 Safety Barriers .................................................................................................... 4-19
  4.3.9 Connection of Miscellaneous Hardware ............................................................. 4-19
  4.3.10 Shielding and Grounding .................................................................................... 4-20
4.4 MECHANICAL INSTALLATION, MODELS 340D, A, AND G ................................. 4-21
  4.4.1 Pipe Mounting, Models 340D, A, and G .............................................................. 4-21
  4.4.2 Flat Surface Mounting, Models 340D, A, and G ................................................. 4-25
  4.4.3 Direct Mounting to Process, Model 340D ............................................................ 4-28
4.5 MECHANICAL INSTALLATION, MODEL 340F ........................................................ 4-29
4.6 MECHANICAL INSTALLATION, ALL MODELS ...................................................... 4-32
  4.6.1 Smart Display Installation, Repositioning, and Removal ...................................... 4-32
  4.6.2 Electrical Conduit and Cable Installation ............................................................. 4-34
    4.6.2.1 Conduit ........................................................................................................... 4-34
    4.6.2.2 Cables ............................................................................................................ 4-35
    4.6.2.3 Access to Transmitter Terminal Compartment ............................................. 4-35
4.7 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION ............................................................................... 4-36
  4.7.1 Loop Wiring ......................................................................................................... 4-36
  4.7.2 Transient Suppressor Option ............................................................................... 4-37
4.8 HAZARDOUS AREA INSTALLATION ...................................................................... 4-37

5.0 POST-INSTALLATION CHECKOUT ......................................................................... 5-1
  5.1 EQUIPMENT REQUIRED ....................................................................................... 5-1
  5.2 INSTALLATION REVIEW ....................................................................................... 5-1
  5.3 EQUIPMENT CONNECTION ................................................................................... 5-2
  5.4 VERIFICATION ....................................................................................................... 5-2
    5.4.1 Communication Test ......................................................................................... 5-2
    5.4.2 Communications Error Check ......................................................................... 5-3
    5.4.3 Verify Analog Output Signal ............................................................................ 5-3

6.0 ON-LINE CONFIGURATION AND OPERATION ...................................................... 6-1
  6.1 REMOTE CONFIGURATION AND OPERATION .................................................... 6-1
    6.1.1 Configuration ...................................................................................................... 6-1
      6.1.1.1 Sensor Input Block ...................................................................................... 6-2
      6.1.1.2 Totalizer Block ............................................................................................ 6-4
      6.1.1.3 Characterizer ............................................................................................... 6-5
      6.1.1.4 Operator Display Block ............................................................................. 6-5
      6.1.1.5 Transmitter ID ............................................................................................. 6-7

May 1998
6.1.1.6 Output Block .......................................................... 6-7
6.1.1.7 Alarm Block .......................................................... 6-8
6.1.1.8 SP Track & Hold Block ............................................ 6-9
6.1.1.9 A/M Transfer ....................................................... 6-9
6.1.1.10 Controller .......................................................... 6-10
6.1.2 SEND and SAVE a Configuration .................................. 6-11
6.1.3 Quick Access Key Functions ....................................... 6-12
6.1.3.1 XMTR Variables .................................................. 6-12
6.1.3.2 Status ............................................................... 6-13
6.1.3.3 Totalizer Control ................................................ 6-14
6.1.3.4 PID Control ....................................................... 6-14
6.1.3.5 Range Xmtr ........................................................ 6-15
6.2 LOCAL TRANSMITTER OPERATION ................................... 6-16
6.2.1 Smart Display Functionality ....................................... 6-16
6.2.2 Toggling the Display Manually ................................... 6-17
6.3 LOCAL TRANSMITTER CONFIGURATION (CONTROLLER OFF) .... 6-18
6.3.1 Set Local Zero ....................................................... 6-18
6.3.2 Set Local Fullscale ................................................ 6-18
6.3.3 Adjust Local Damping .............................................. 6-19
6.4 LOCAL TRANSMITTER-CONTROLLER CONFIGURATION (CONTROLLER ON) 6-20
6.4.1 Local A/M, Setpoint, and Valve Adjustments .................. 6-20
6.5 DISABLING THE MAGNETIC SWITCHES .............................. 6-22

7.0 CALIBRATION AND MAINTENANCE ........................................ 7-1
7.1 CALIBRATION .............................................................. 7-1
7.1.1 Equipment Required ................................................. 7-1
7.1.2 Zero Trim ............................................................. 7-3
7.1.2.1 Removing Zero Shift ............................................ 7-4
7.1.3 On-Line Zero Adjust ............................................... 7-5
7.1.4 Calibrate Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) ................... 7-5
7.2 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE .......................................... 7-7
7.2.1 Tool and Equipment Requirements ................................ 7-7
7.2.2 Transmitter Exterior Inspection ................................... 7-7
7.2.3 Transmitter Exterior Cleaning ..................................... 7-8
7.2.4 Transmitter Enclosure Interior Inspection ....................... 7-8
7.2.5 Transmitter Calibration ............................................. 7-8
7.2.6 Impulse Piping ....................................................... 7-8
7.3 TROUBLESHOOTING ................................................... 7-9
7.3.1 Analog Output ........................................................ 7-9
7.3.2 Digital Output (Communication) ................................... 7-10
7.3.3 Diagnosing a Defective Transmitter ............................... 7-10
7.3.3.1 Additional Troubleshooting for Electronics Module Failure 7-11
7.3.3.2 Additional Troubleshooting for a Sensor Assembly ......... 7-12
7.4 ASSEMBLY REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT ............................ 7-12
7.4.1 Replacing the Electronics Module ................................ 7-13
7.4.2 Sensor Assembly Removal and Replacement ..................... 7-13
7.4.3 Terminal Board Assembly Removal and Replacement .......... 7-15
7.5 NON-FIELD-REPLACEABLE ITEMS ..................................... 7-15
7.6 TRANSMITTER REPLACEMENT ........................................ 7-16
7.7 MAINTENANCE RECORDS ............................................... 7-16
7.8 RECOMMENDED SPARE AND REPLACEMENT PARTS ............... 7-17
7.9 SOFTWARE COMPATIBILITY ............................................ 7-17
7.10 RETURN SHIPMENT ................................................... 7-18
8.0 CIRCUIT DESCRIPTION ............................................................................................................. 8-1
  8.1 SENSOR ASSEMBLY .................................................................................................................. 8-1
  8.2 ELECTRONICS MODULE ....................................................................................................... 8-1
  8.3 THEORY OF OPERATION ...................................................................................................... 8-3
    8.3.1 Pressure to Frequency Conversion ..................................................................................... 8-3
    8.3.2 Frequency to Digital Conversion ....................................................................................... 8-3
    8.3.3 D/A Conversion and Current Signal Transmission ............................................................ 8-4
    8.3.4 Communication Format ..................................................................................................... 8-4
  8.4 TRANSIENT SUPPRESSOR OPTION ...................................................................................... 8-4

9.0 MODEL DESIGNATIONS AND SPECIFICATIONS ................................................................... 9-1
  9.1 MODEL DESIGNATIONS ......................................................................................................... 9-1
  9.2 ACCESSORIES ...................................................................................................................... 9-8
  9.3 SPECIFICATIONS .................................................................................................................. 9-8
    9.3.1 Mechanical ....................................................................................................................... 9-8
    9.3.2 Performance and Functional Specifications ....................................................................... 9-12
    9.3.3 Two-Wire Cable ............................................................................................................... 9-15
    9.3.4 Environmental ................................................................................................................ 9-15
    9.3.5 Hazardous Area Classification ....................................................................................... 9-17
      9.3.5.1 CSA Hazardous Locations Precautions ................................................................... 9-18
    9.3.6 Special Conditions For Safe Use .................................................................................... 9-18

A.0 APPENDIX A - FUNCTION BLOCKS ......................................................................................... A-1
  A.1 WRITE PROTECT BLOCK ....................................................................................................... A-2
  A.2 SENSOR INPUT BLOCK ......................................................................................................... A-2
  A.3 CHARACTERIZER .................................................................................................................. A-4
  A.4 TOTALIZER BLOCK .............................................................................................................. A-4
  A.5 OPERATOR DISPLAY BLOCK ............................................................................................... A-5
  A.6 TRANSMITTER ID BLOCK .................................................................................................... A-8
  A.7 ALARM BLOCK .................................................................................................................... A-9
  A.8 SETPOINT TRACK AND HOLD BLOCK ............................................................................... A-10
  A.9 CONTROLLER BLOCK ......................................................................................................... A-10
  A.10 A/M TRANSFER BLOCK ..................................................................................................... A-12
  A.11 OUTPUT BLOCK .................................................................................................................. A-13

B.0 APPENDIX B - HAZARDOUS AREA INSTALLATION ............................................................. B-1

C.0 TRANSMITTER CONFIGURATION DOCUMENTATION ......................................................... C-1

D.0 APPENDIX D - ELEVATION AND SUPPRESSION CORRECTIONS .............................................. D-1
  D.1 HOW ADJUSTMENT IS MADE ............................................................................................... D-1
  D.2 ELEVATION CALCULATION EXAMPLE ............................................................................. D-2
  D.3 SUPPRESSION CALCULATION EXAMPLE ........................................................................ D-2
  D.4 RECOMMENDED METHOD FOR 340 TRANSMITTERS ......................................................... D-3

E.0 APPENDIX E - CENELEC EEX D INSTALLATIONS ................................................................. E-1

F.0 APPENDIX F - STATIC PRESSURE CORRECTION .................................................................. F-1

W.0 APPENDIX W - WARRANTY .................................................................................................. W-1

PARTS LIST
## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIGURE AND TITLE</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-1 Model 340D Transmitter</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2 Models 340A and 340G</td>
<td>1-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-3 Model 340F Differential Transmitter with Flange</td>
<td>1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-4 Traditional Process Variable Measurement</td>
<td>1-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-5 Model 340 in Transmitter-Controller Role</td>
<td>1-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-6 Optional Smart Display</td>
<td>1-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-7 Terminal Board</td>
<td>1-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-1 Model 275 Universal HART Communicator</td>
<td>2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-2 HART Communicator Connections to a Transmitter Loop</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-3 Communicator Display Icons</td>
<td>2-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-4 Offline Menu Tree</td>
<td>2-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-5 Online Menu Tree for Model 340 Transmitter</td>
<td>2-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-6 Generic Online Menu Tree</td>
<td>2-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-1 Bench Test Connections</td>
<td>3-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-2 Field Test Connections</td>
<td>3-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-1 Differential Flow Measurement Piping for Gas or Liquid</td>
<td>4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-2 Differential Liquid Measurement Piping</td>
<td>4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-3 Absolute or Gauge Pressure Measurement Piping</td>
<td>4-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-4 Steam Service, Below the Line Mounting</td>
<td>4-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-5 Open and Closed Tank Level Measurement, Flange Mounted Differential Transmitters</td>
<td>4-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-6 Point-To-Point Network (Analog Mode)</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-7 Model 353/354 to Model 340 Connections (Analog Mode)</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-8 Wiring for Controller Operation</td>
<td>4-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-9 Multi-Drop Network (Digital Mode)</td>
<td>4-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-10 2&quot; Pipe Mount Bracket, Model 340D</td>
<td>4-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-11 2&quot; Pipe Mount Bracket, Models 340A and G</td>
<td>4-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-12 Universal Mounting Bracket, Model 340D</td>
<td>4-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-13 Universal Mounting Bracket, Models 340A and G</td>
<td>4-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-14 Flange Mounted Transmitter, Model 340F</td>
<td>4-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-15 Smart Display Removal and Repositioning</td>
<td>4-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-16 Conduit Drain and Explosion Proof Installations</td>
<td>4-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-17 Conductor Terminations</td>
<td>4-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-1 Equipment Connection for System Checkout</td>
<td>5-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-1 Bench Test Connections</td>
<td>7-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-2 Field Test Connections</td>
<td>7-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-1 Block Diagram, Electronics Module and Sensor Assembly</td>
<td>8-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-1 Dimensions, Model 340D Transmitter</td>
<td>9-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-2 Dimensions, Models 340A and G</td>
<td>9-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-1 Function Block Arrangement in Model 340 Transmitters</td>
<td>A-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control Drawing for Model 340 Transmitter</td>
<td>B-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
D-1 Elevated Span Example .................................................................................................................. D-1
D-2 Suppressed Span Example ............................................................................................................... D-1
D-3 Elevation Calculation Example ..................................................................................................... D-2
D-4 Suppression Calculation Example .................................................................................................. D-2

LIST OF TABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE AND TITLE</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-1 Model Number vs. Figure References</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-1 Function Keys with Their Labels and Actions Performed</td>
<td>2-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-2 Moore Products Co. Device Descriptions</td>
<td>2-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-1 Operating Mode and Network</td>
<td>4-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-2 Flange and Extension Dimensions</td>
<td>4-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-1 Model 340D, Model Designation</td>
<td>9-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-2 Model 340A, Model Designation</td>
<td>9-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-3 Model 340G, Model Designation</td>
<td>9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-4 Model 340F, Model Designation</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-5 Model 340 Sterling High Performance</td>
<td>9-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-6 Model 340 with Tantalum Diaphragms</td>
<td>9-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-7 Model 340 Accessories</td>
<td>9-8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CHANGES FOR REVISION 5, MAY 1998

Significant changes for Revision 5 are listed below and are indicated in text by change bars in the page margins.

Cover

Section 7
- Subsection 7.1.2.1 revised to include a statement concerning zero offset correction.

Section 9
- Subsection 9.3.2 revised with updated Maximum Working Pressure specifications.

Appendix A
- Totalizer information updated.

Parts List
- Update to Rev 3 includes new service parts kit information.

CHANGES FOR REVISION 5, APRIL 2000

Sections 1, 4 and 9
- Illustrations revised to improve PDF.

Section 9
- Subsections 9.3.5 and 9.3.6 revised.

The Moore logo is a registered trademark of Siemens Moore Process Automation, Inc.
XTC, Smart Display, DDP, and MycroSENSOR are trademarks of Siemens Moore Process Automation, Inc.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Siemens Moore Process Automation, Inc. assumes no liability for errors or omissions in this document or for the application and use of information included in this document. The information herein is subject to change without notice.

Procedures in this document have been reviewed for compliance with applicable approval agency requirements and are considered sound practice. Neither Siemens Moore Process Automation, Inc. nor these agencies are responsible for repairs made by the user.
1.0 INTRODUCTION

This user’s manual is for the APACS XTC Model 340 Series of Smart Pressure Transmitter-Controllers.

NOTE

Throughout this manual the term transmitter includes both transmitter-controller operation and transmitter-only operation. The term transmitter-controller is used when discussing controller-related operations, such as the Controller function block.

All information needed to bench test, install, configure, calibrate, and service a transmitter is included in this user’s manual.

IMPORTANT

Save this user’s manual for installing, configuring, operating, and servicing a Model 340 transmitter.

1.1 SECTION CONTENTS

Ten sections and four appendices make up this manual. A brief description of each section follows.

Section 1, INTRODUCTION, describes each section in this manual and provides a brief description of the Model 340 Smart Pressure Transmitter-Controller line.

Section 2, MODEL 275 UNIVERSAL HART COMMUNICATOR, describes use of the HART Communicator to test, configure, and calibrate a transmitter.

Section 3, COMMISSIONING AND BENCH TESTING, provides procedures to perform a bench test of the transmitter to ensure proper operation of all functions. Start-up configuration is described here. If desired, go to Section 6 to perform a complete configuration. The calibration procedure in Section 7 can be performed following configuration if the mounting position will induce a zero shift.

Section 4, INSTALLATION, furnishes specific information for mechanical and electrical installation.

Section 5, POST-INSTALLATION CHECKOUT, describes how to confirm that the transmitter has been installed correctly.

Section 6, ON-LINE CONFIGURATION AND OPERATION, describes on-line configuration and operation and local configuration using the magnetic switches.

Section 7, CALIBRATION AND MAINTENANCE, provides calibration procedures for analog and digital modes and a zeroing procedure for mounting position. It also furnishes preventive maintenance, troubleshooting, and assembly replacement procedures. A spare and replacement parts list is provided at the back of this manual.

Section 8, CIRCUIT DESCRIPTION, contains an assembly-level circuit description to support transmitter servicing.
Section 9, MODEL DESIGNATIONS AND SPECIFICATIONS, furnishes tables describing transmitter model numbers, and it contains mechanical, functional, performance, and environmental specifications. Hazardous area certifications are also listed.

Section 10, GLOSSARY, contains definitions of various transmitter-related terms.

APPENDIX A describes transmitter function blocks and the parameters available.

APPENDIX B contains hazardous area installation drawings and information needed for barrier selection.

APPENDIX C provides configuration documentation for entering application-specific configuration data for the transmitter.

APPENDIX D explains how to perform elevation and suppression calculations necessary for certain liquid level gauging applications.

WARRANTY contains the product warranty statements and information concerning servicing of the product during the warranty period.

PARTS LIST shows exploded views of the four basic models of 340 Series transmitters and a list of on-hand spare parts and field-replaceable parts.

1.2 PRODUCT DESCRIPTION

Model 340 transmitters are part of the Moore Products Co. XTC line of smart pressure and temperature field devices. They provide reliable, accurate, stable, and cost-effective measurement of differential, absolute, and gauge pressures.

Pressure sensor style influences a Model 340’s physical dimensions and mechanical installation. Note that a sensor style can involve one or more pressure measurement methods (i.e., differential, absolute, and gauge), as shown in Table 1-1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MODELS</th>
<th>PRESSURE SENSOR</th>
<th>REFER TO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Model 340D, all</td>
<td>Differential</td>
<td>Figures 1-1, 4-10, 4-12, and 9-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model 340A</td>
<td>Absolute, with tantalum diaphragm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model 340G</td>
<td>Gauge, with tantalum diaphragm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model 340S</td>
<td>Saturated SteaMeter™</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model 340A</td>
<td>Absolute</td>
<td>Figures 1-2, 4-11, 4-13, and 9-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model 340G</td>
<td>Gauge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model 340F</td>
<td>Differential, flanged level</td>
<td>Figures 1-3 and 4-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Differential, flanged level, with extension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes:

1. Process Connection Blocks can be rotated 180° to give the following connection centers: 2.00 (50.1), 2.13 (54.1), or 2.25 (57.2). Dimensions are in inches (millimeters).

2. Also shows Models 340A and 340G with tantalum diaphragms.

FIGURE 1-1 Model 340D Transmitter (See Note 2)
Note:
1. For a Model 340A or G with tantalum diaphragms, see Figure 1-1.

FIGURE 1-2  Model 340A And 340G (See Note 1)
FIGURE 1-3 Model 340F Differential Transmitter with Flange

Note:
1. A Process Connection Block with 1/2 NPT process connection can be installed.
Each transmitter is a microprocessor-based, self-contained pressure-to-current transducer. The heart of the transmitter is the MycroSENSOR™. Developed and patented by Moore Products Co., the MycroSENSOR is a silicon, dual-capacitance pressure sensor assembly. It generates a direct digital output signal that is proportional to input pressure.

The direct digital output in conjunction with the microprocessor provides Direct Digital Processing (DDP™). DDP provides advanced processing and compensation for varying ambient temperature and static pressure. This yields improved performance, stability, and reliability compared to conventional analog transmitters. Although signal processing is digital, a transmitter can be configured to operate in either an analog mode or a digital mode, for a Point-to-Point or a Multi-Drop network, respectively.

ANALOG MODE: A single transmitter is connected to a controller, recorder, or other field device. A loop known as a Point-to-Point network interconnects the instruments. Figure 1-4 shows a traditional application.

![FIGURE 1-4 Traditional Application](image)

Figure 1-5 shows an application using the Model 340’s built-in controller function, with a Model 385 Loop Operator’s Station. Here the transmitter-controller’s 4-20 mA output is the valve signal, which is sent directly to the final control element. The measured variable and other variables are communicated to the Loop Operator’s Station using the HART protocol.

![FIGURE 1-5 Transmitter-Controller Application](image)
The HART® (Highway Addressable Remote Transducer) protocol is used for communication between the transmitter and a HART Communicator, a personal computer running configuration software, or another remote device. This is done by superimposing the HART digital signal on the analog current. Communications can transfer a new or edited configuration, remotely monitor the process variable, or service a transmitter.

DIGITAL MODE: When the Model 340 is used only as a transmitter, 1-15 transmitters can be parallel connected to a Multi-Drop network using only twisted-pair cable. The HART protocol is employed to send all process variable information to a HART-compatible controller, recorder, or other device.

A Model 340 can be equipped with an optional Smart Display™ (Figure 1-6) to permit local viewing of output variables and to make local configuration easier. Connection to the loop is made using a terminal board with three screw terminals (Figure 1-7), which is located on the opposite end of the transmitter enclosure from the Smart Display.

All Model 340 transmitters have an intrinsically safe, explosion proof, NEMA 4x (IP67/68), field mountable, hardened enclosure. Electrical conduit connections are ½ NPT or M20. All process wetted materials are 316 stainless steel or better. The flush-mount process connection of the Model 340F is compatible with standard ANSI and metric flange sizes for tanks and pipes.
1.3 CONFIGURATION

A Model 340 transmitter must be configured before use. Each transmitter is shipped with either a default configuration or, if specified at time of order, a custom configuration defined by the user. The user may need to edit the default configuration before the transmitter is used in a loop.

1.4 PRODUCT SUPPORT

Product support can be obtained from the Moore Products Co. Technical Information Center (TIC). TIC is a customer service center that provides direct phone support on technical issues related to the functionality, application, and integration of all products supplied by Moore Products Co.

To contact TIC for support, either call 215-646-7400, extension 4TIC (4842). The following information should be at hand when contacting TIC for support:

- Caller ID number, or name and company name
- When calling for support for the first time, a “personal caller number” is assigned. This number is mailed in the form of a caller card. Having the number available when calling for support will allow the TIC representative taking the call to use the central customer database to quickly identify the caller’s location and past support needs.
- Product part number or model number and version
- If there is a problem with the product’s operation:
  - Is the problem intermittent or constant?
  - What steps were performed before the problem occurred?
  - What steps have been performed since the problem occurred?
  - What symptoms accompany the problem? Is an error message displayed?
  - What is the installation environment: temperature range, humidity, vibration, etc?
2.0 MODEL 275 UNIVERSAL HART COMMUNICATOR

The Model 275 Universal HART Communicator is a handheld interface that provides a common communication link to XTC 340 Series transmitters and other HART-compatible instruments.

This section describes HART Communicator connections, liquid crystal display, keypad, and on-line and off-line menus. It also provides short overviews of some of the Communicator’s functions. The Communicator is shown in Figure 2-1. For information about the Communicator’s battery pack, Memory Module, Data Pack, and maintenance procedures, refer to the manual supplied with the Communicator.

2.1 INTRODUCTION

From a wiring termination point, the HART Communicator interfaces with a Model 340 transmitter or other HART device using a 4-20 mA loop, provided a minimum load resistance of 250Ω is present between the Communicator and the power supply. The Communicator uses the Bell 202 frequency-shift keying (FSK) technique of high-frequency digital signals imposed on a standard transmitter current loop of 4-20 mA. Because no net energy is added to the loop, HART communication does not disturb the 4-20 mA signal. The Communicator can be used in hazardous and non-hazardous locations.

WARNING

Explosions can cause death or serious injury. Before connecting the HART Communicator in an explosive atmosphere, make sure that the instruments in the loop are installed in accordance with intrinsically safe or non-incendive field wiring practices. Refer to the Communicator nameplate and the manual supplied with the Communicator for certifications and approvals before connecting.

2.2 COMMUNICATOR CONNECTIONS

The Communicator can interface with a transmitter from the control room, the instrument site, or any wiring termination point in the loop. Connections are made through loop connectors on the Communicator’s connection panel (Figure 2-1). The connection panel may have a jack for the optional NiCad recharger, and it has a serial port for a future connection to a personal computer (PC).

To interface with a transmitter or other HART device, connect the HART Communicator in parallel with the instrument or load resistor. The connections are nonpolar. For intrinsically safe FM and CSA wiring connections, see the manual supplied with the Communicator.

WARNING

Explosions can result in death or serious injury. Before making connections to the serial port or NiCad recharger jack in an explosive atmosphere, check the Communicator nameplate and the manual supplied with the Communicator for approvals.

Figure 2-2 illustrates typical wiring connections between the HART Communicator and a loop with a Model 340 transmitter or other HART-compatible device on a loop. The Communicator is quickly connected into a transmitter loop.
**FIGURE 2-1 Model 275 Universal HART Communicator**
Notes:

1. HART Communicator Connections:
   Non-hazardous location - Connect as shown above.
   Hazardous location - Refer to Communicator nameplate and the Manual supplied
   with the Communicator for certifications and approvals before connecting.

   The HART Communicator is a non-polar device.

2. The System Power Supply may be part of the host input device or a separate device.

3. Network resistance equals the sum of the barrier resistances and the current sense resistor.
   Minimum value 250 Ohms; maximum value 1100 Ohms.

4. Supply and return barriers shown. Interconnect all cable shields and ground only at the barriers.

FIGURE 2-2  HART Communicator Connections to a Transmitter Loop
A 40" (1 m) cable with a dual banana plug on one end and two mini-grabber plugs on the other is provided. The dual banana plug is inserted into the top of the Communicator; the mini-grabber clips are connected to lugs in the Model 340’s terminal board compartment or to the loop’s current sense resistance, usually at a receiving instrument (see Note below).

**NOTE**

The HART protocol requires a network (loop) resistance between 250\(\Omega\) and 1100\(\Omega\) to support communications. See Section 4.3.5 to determine resistance value and loop supply voltage.

### 2.3 CONTROLS OVERVIEW

As shown in Figure 2-1, the front of the HART Communicator has five major functional areas: liquid crystal display (LCD), function keys, action keys, alphanumeric keys, and shift keys. The next five sections describe how each of these functional areas is used to enter commands and display data.

#### 2.3.1 Liquid Crystal Display

The liquid crystal display (LCD) is an 8-line by 21-character display that provides communication between the user and a connected device. When the HART Communicator is connected to a Model 340 transmitter or other HART-compatible device, the top line of the Online menu displays the model name of the device and its tag. A typical display is shown below:

```
MPCO 340A:PT100
Online
1->Loop Override
2 Calibrate/Test
3 Configure Xmtr
HELP | SAVE
```

The bottom line of each menu is reserved for dynamic labels for the software-defined function keys, F1-F4, which are found directly below the display. More information on software-defined function keys is given in the next section.

#### 2.3.2 Software-Defined Function Keys

The four software-defined function keys (softkeys), located below the LCD and marked F1 through F4, are used to perform software functions as indicated by the dynamic labels. Pressing the function key immediately beneath a label activates the displayed function.

The label appearing above a function key indicates the function of that key for the current menu. For example, in menus providing access to on-line help, the HELP label appears above the F1 key. In menus providing access to the Online menu, the HOME label appears above the F3 key. Table 2-1 lists these labels and describes what happens when each function key is pressed.
### TABLE 2-1 Function Keys with Their Labels and Actions Performed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>F1</th>
<th>F2</th>
<th>F3</th>
<th>F4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HELP</td>
<td>ON/OFF</td>
<td>ABORT</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access on-line help</td>
<td>activate or deactivate a bit-enumerated binary variable</td>
<td>terminate current task</td>
<td>Acknowledge information on the LCD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETRY</td>
<td>DEL</td>
<td>ESC</td>
<td>ENTER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try to reestablish communication</td>
<td>delete current character or Quick Access Key menu item</td>
<td>leave a value unchanged</td>
<td>accept user-entered data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXIT</td>
<td>SEND</td>
<td>QUIT</td>
<td>EXIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave the current menu</td>
<td>send configuration data to device</td>
<td>terminate session because of a communication error</td>
<td>leave the current menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YES</td>
<td>PGUP</td>
<td>PGDN</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Answer to yes/no question</td>
<td>move up one help screen</td>
<td>move down one help screen</td>
<td>answer to yes/no question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>PREV</td>
<td>NEXT</td>
<td>ONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include current Quick Access Key item on Quick Access Key menu for all devices</td>
<td>go to previous message in a list of messages</td>
<td>go to next message in a list of messages</td>
<td>include Quick Access Key item for one device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEXT</td>
<td>SAVE</td>
<td>HOME</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go to the next variable in off-line edit</td>
<td>save information to Communicator</td>
<td>go the top menu in the device description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FILTR</td>
<td>MARK</td>
<td>BACK</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open customization menu to sort configurations</td>
<td>toggle marked variable in configuration to be sent to a field device</td>
<td>go back to the menu from which HOME was pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XPAND</td>
<td>EDIT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>opens detailed configuration information</td>
<td>edit a variable value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CMPRS</td>
<td>ADD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>closes detailed configuration information</td>
<td>add current item to Quick Access Key menu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.3.3 Action Keys

Directly beneath the LCD and software-defined function keys are six blue, white, and black action keys. Each has a specific function as described below:

- **ON/OFF KEY** – Use to power-up the Communicator. When the Communicator is turned on, it automatically searches for a HART-compatible device on the 4-20 mA loop. If no device is found, the Communicator displays the Main menu:

  ![HART Communicator Menu]

  HART Communicator
  1->Offline
  2 Online
  3 Frequency device
  4 Utility

  If a HART-compatible device is found, the Communicator displays the Online menu:

  ![MPCO 340A:PT100 Menu]

  MPCO 340A:PT100
  Online
  1->Loop Override
  2 Calibrate/Test
  3 Configure Xmtr

  HELP | SAVE

- **UP ARROW KEY** – Use to move the cursor up through a menu or list of options or to scroll through lists of available characters when editing fields that accept both alpha and numeric data.

- **DOWN ARROW KEY** – Use to move the cursor through a menu or a list of options or to scroll through lists of available characters when editing fields that accept alpha and numeric data.

- **LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU KEY** – Use to move the cursor to the left or back to the previous menu.

- **RIGHT ARROW/SELECT KEY** – Use to move the cursor to the right or to select a menu option.

- **QUICK ACCESS KEY (HOT KEY)** – When the Communicator is on and connected to a HART-compatible device, pressing the Quick Access Key instantly displays the Quick Access Key menu of user-defined options. When the Communicator is off and the Quick Access Key is pressed, the Communicator automatically powers-up and displays the Quick Access Key menu.

  See Section 2.6 for more information on using the Quick Access Key.
IMPORTANT

When performing certain operations, the message “OFF KEY DISABLED” indicates that the Communicator cannot be turned off. This feature helps prevent accidental shutoff of the Communicator while the output of a device is fixed or a device variable is being edited.

2.3.4 Alphanumeric and Shift Keys

The alphanumeric keys perform two functions: (1) rapid selection of menu options and (2) data entry. The shift keys located below the alphanumeric keys on the keypad are used during data entry to select from among the characters available above each number.

2.3.4.1 Rapid Selection of Menu Options

From any menu, use the keypad to select available options in two ways. First, use the UP or DOWN arrow keys, followed by the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key, to access available options displayed on the LCD. As an alternative, use the rapid select feature. Simply press the number on the alphanumeric keypad that corresponds to the desired menu option. For example, to quickly access the Utility menu from the Main menu, simply press “4” on the keypad.

2.3.4.2 Data Entry

Some menus require data entry. Use the alphanumeric and shift keys to enter all alphanumeric information into the HART Communicator. Pressing an alphanumeric key alone while editing causes the large character in the center of the key (number 0-9, decimal point, or dash) to be entered. Pressing and releasing a shift key activates shift and causes the appropriate arrow icon ( , , or ) to appear in the upper right-hand corner of the LCD. When shift is activated, the indicated alpha characters or symbols are entered when the keypad is used.

Example

To enter a number, such as “7,” simply press the number key.

To enter one of the small characters appearing above the large numeral (i.e., a letter, space, or mathematical symbol), first press and release the corresponding shift key at the bottom of the keypad, then press the desired alphanumeric key. To enter the letter “E,” press and release the middle shift key, then press the number “2” key.

To deactivate a shift key without entering a letter, space, or mathematical symbol, simply press that shift key again.
2.4 GETTING TO KNOW THE COMMUNICATOR

The HART Communicator operates in either of two modes: on-line or off-line. Off-line operation is used to create or edit a configuration that can then be downloaded to a HART device, such as the Model 340. On-line operation is used to download a configuration to a HART device, upload a configuration, edit HART device operating parameters, and monitor process values.

For off-line operation, the Communicator need not be connected to a HART device. On-line operation requires a connection to a HART device.

The menu that appears first when the Communicator is turned on depends on the mode. When the Communicator is powered-up in off-line mode, the first menu displayed is the Main menu. When the Communicator is powered-up in on-line mode, the first menu displayed is the Online menu. To work off-line when connected to the loop, access the Main menu from the Online menu by pressing the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key.

2.4.1 Display Icons

Several different symbols (icons) appear on the LCD to show the state of the Communicator and provide visible response to actions of the user. Figure 2-3 shows the display icons and how they relate to keypad functions.

2.4.2 Menu Structure

The HART Communicator uses a hierarchical menu structure. That is, high-level menus are accessed first, and they provide access to lower-level menus. This structure groups related functions together and minimizes the number of options displayed at once.
To learn how the menu structure works, perform the following actions:

1. With the Communicator off-line (not attached to any devices), press the ON/OFF key to turn the Communicator on. It displays the Main menu, with the cursor (→) positioned at “1 Offline.”

2. Access the Utility menu by pressing the DOWN arrow key three times, then pressing the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key. The display changes to show the Utility menu.

3. Access the Configure Communicator menu from the Utility menu by pressing the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key. The display changes to show the Configure Communicator menu.

4. Access the Contrast menu by pressing the DOWN arrow once, then pressing the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key. The display shows a message explaining how to adjust the LCD contrast.

5. Press ESC (F3) to return to the Configure Communicator menu.

6. Press the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key two times to return to the Main menu.

7. Press the ON/OFF key to turn the Communicator off.

### 2.4.3 Reviewing Installed Devices

For the HART Communicator to recognize a HART-compatible device, it must have a description for that device installed. The HART Communicator is supplied from the factory with descriptions for Model 340 Transmitters and other HART-compatible devices from leading manufacturers. In addition, it contains a generic device description, which allows limited access to most HART devices when no device description for that specific device exists in the Communicator.

To review the currently installed devices on the Communicator, use the following steps:

1. Turn on the Communicator (off-line) to display the Main Menu.

2. From the Main menu, press “4” on the keypad for quick access to the Utility Menu.

3. From the Utility menu, press “5” on the keypad to access the simulation mode. The LCD shows the Manufacturer menu, which contains a list of manufacturers whose device descriptions are installed in the Communicator.

4. Press the DOWN arrow until Moore Products appears. Press the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key to reveal the Model menu, which lists the Moore Products Co. devices currently installed in the Communicator (see Table 2-2).

5. To end the review of devices, press the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key three times.

6. Turn off the Communicator or proceed to the next section.
TABLE 2-2 Moore Device Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MODEL</th>
<th>FIELD DEVICE REVISION</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>APPROXIMATE VINTAGE¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>340B</td>
<td>Dev V1, DD V1</td>
<td>340 Transmitter-Controllers (pushbutton design)</td>
<td>8/90 - 8/96, Model #s 340__B…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>340A</td>
<td>Dev V1, DD V1</td>
<td>340 Transmitter (pushbutton design)</td>
<td>8/90 - 8/94, Model #s 340__A…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>344</td>
<td>Dev V1, DD V1</td>
<td>344 Transmitter-Controller</td>
<td>8/90 - 8/94 Model #s 344…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dev V2, DD V1</td>
<td>344 Transmitter-Controller</td>
<td>8/90 - Present, Model #s 344…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>341 Type 5</td>
<td>Dev V1, DD V1</td>
<td>341 Transmitter</td>
<td>8/94 - Present, Model #s 341…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>340A Type 6</td>
<td>Dev V1, DD V1</td>
<td>340 Transmitter (pushbutton design)</td>
<td>8/94 - 8/96, Model #s 340__A…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dev V2, DD V1</td>
<td>340 Transmitter (magnetic switch design)</td>
<td>Present, Model #s 340__B…</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note

¹Always verify the Model and Field Device Revision for the device at hand using the Quick Access Key\Status\Model command of the Model 275 HART Communicator.

2.5 MAIN MENU

When the Communicator is not connected to a device, the first menu to appear after powering up is the Main menu (at right). If the Communicator is turned on when connected to a device, access the Main menu by pressing the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key. Depending on which submenu of the on-line series is displayed, it may be necessary to press the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key more than once. Alternatively, press HOME (F3) to display the Online menu, followed by the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key to display the Main menu.

From the Main menu, access additional menus by moving the cursor to them with the UP or DOWN arrow keys, followed by pressing the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key, or simply by pressing the appropriate number (1-4) on the alphanumeric keypad.
2.5.1 Offline Menu

The Offline menu provides access to two other menus: New Configuration and Saved Configuration. These two configuration menus can be used without connecting to a HART-compatible device, but it is not possible to send saved data to a device if no device is connected.

From the Main menu, press “1” on the keypad or the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key to access the Offline menu. The complete menu tree for the Offline Menu is shown in Figure 2-4.

```
1 New Configuration
   1 New Manufacturer Model Fld dev rev
   2 Saved Configuration
      1 Name
      2 Saved Configuration
          1 Edit
          2 Copy to...
          3 Send
          4 Print
          5 Delete
          6 Rename
          7 Compare
   2 Saved Configuration
      1 Edit
      2 Copy to...
      3 Send
      4 Print
      5 Delete
      6 Rename
      7 Compare
   3 Saved Configuration
      1 Edit
      2 Copy to...
      3 Send
      4 Print
      5 Delete
      6 Rename
      7 Compare
   4 Save as...
      1 Location
      2 Name
      3 Data Type
   5 Delete
   6 Rename
   7 Compare
   From Blank Template
      1 Mark all
      2 Unmark all
      3 Edit individually
      4 Save as...
      1 Location
      2 Name
      3 Data Type
   Save As...
      1 Location
      2 Name
      3 Data Type
```

**FIGURE 2-4 Offline Menu Tree**

2.5.1.1 New Configuration

This option is used to compile a custom set of device configuration data for downloading later to one or more HART-compatible devices. Downloading the same data to multiple devices ensures that they all store identical configuration data.

Use the following steps to compile off-line, new device configuration data:

1. From the Main menu, press “1” to access the Offline menu.
2. Press “1” to enter a new configuration. The Manufacturer menu appears.
3. Choose a manufacturer by scrolling to the manufacturer name with the DOWN arrow, then pressing RIGHT ARROW/SELECT. The Model menu appears.
4. From the Model menu, choose a device by scrolling through the list, then pressing RIGHT ARROW/SELECT. The Field Device Revision (Fld dev rev) menu appears.

The Field Device Revision menu contains the currently installed software revisions for the field device and device descriptions (DD) for the model selected from the Model menu.
Select the software revision (RIGHT ARROW/SELECT or number) to access the Blank Template menu (at right). To discover the software revision for a particular device, connect the Communicator to the device and follow instructions given in the device manual.

To find the software revision number for a Model 340 Transmitter, establish a connection to the Communicator, then press the Quick Access Key. From the Quick Access Key menu, press “1” to view the Status menu. The software revision is line 3. If the software revision is not displayed, press “3” to view the Software rev screen.

5. With the Blank Template menu displayed, choose from the options available, as follows:

**Mark All** – Flag all configurable variables before sending them to a HART-compatible device.

**Unmark All** – Remove the flags from all configurable variables in the configuration. Unmarked configuration variables cannot be sent to a connected HART-compatible device.

**Edit Individually** – Open the Edit individually menu (at right).

**Example**

The Edit individually menu permits the user to change a configuration parameter. For example, to change the engineering units from inH$_2$O to mmH$_2$O, press the EDIT function key (F3) to display the Measured Var Unit menu (below right).

With the Measured Variable Unit menu displayed, use the DOWN arrow to highlight the new unit, then press the ENTER function key (F4). Or, to leave the Unit variable menu without making any change, press the ESC function key (F3) to return to the Edit individually menu. From the Edit individually menu, use EXIT to go back to the Blank Template menu.

**Save As . . .**
Selecting the Save As option allows a new configuration to be saved to either the Memory Module or the Data Pack.

The Memory Module holds up to 10 typical configurations, and contains the operating system software and device application software in non-volatile memory. The Data Pack
stores up to 100 typical configurations in nonvolatile, removable memory.

Example

From the Offline menu, choose 1 New configuration. This displays the Manufacturer menu. Choose a device, then choose a model from the Model menu. Choose a software revision from the Fld dev rev menu.

The Communicator creates a configuration and displays the Blank Template menu. Choose Save as... to display the Save as... menu (at right). With the Location highlighted, press the SAVE (F2) function key to save the configuration.

If the location highlighted is the Module, but the configuration is to be stored in the Data Pack, or vice versa, press the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key to display the Location menu. Choose either Module or Data Pack by pressing ENTER (F4). This displays the Save as... menu again. Press SAVE (F2) to save the configuration in the desired location.

The Save As... menu also is used to enter or edit the configuration Name and Data Type. To name a configuration, simply choose option 2, then use the keypad with shift keys to enter the name as shown at right.

When the Save As... menu is displayed, one of the options – Standard, Partial, or Full – will be shown. To change the option, move the cursor to the Data Type ______ line of the Save As... menu and press the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key to display the Data Type menu (below right).

Data Type Standard refers to all user-editable variables in a device configuration. Data Type Partial refers to only the marked editable variables. Data Type Full refers to all device variables, whether user-editable or not. In general, it is best to save as Data Type Standard. Saving as Data Type Full preserves a complete configuration for future reference.

When all changes have been made, save the new configuration to either the Memory Module or the Data Pack and return to the Offline menu.
2.5.1.2 Saved Configuration

The second option on the Offline menu is the Saved Configuration menu, which permits access to previously stored configuration data.

1. Press “2” from the Offline Menu to display the Saved Configuration menu (at right).

2. Select either Module Contents or Data Pack Contents to open stored configurations. Both storage locations list all saved configurations by assigned Tag. See XPAND (below) for more configuration identification details. (Note: The PC option shown on the menu is not operational with firmware release 1.6.)

The Module Contents menu, which lists the configurations currently stored in the Memory Module, is shown at right. The Data Pack menu is similar. Both give the user several options for handling and viewing configuration data, as explained below.

FILTR

The FILTR function key (F1) opens a menu that provides both Sort and Filter options. These options select only the chosen configurations from all those stored. This is particularly valuable for the Data Pack, which stores up to 100 configurations.

Sort allows unique device configurations to be grouped and displayed by Tag, Descriptor, or user-assigned Name.

Filter allows configurations to be grouped and displayed according to certain characters within the chosen device identifier (Tag, Descriptor, or Name). It is useful for selecting all the tags from a certain area of the process or plant.

When setting up a Filter (see display at right), two wildcard characters, the period (.) and the asterisk (*) are used. The period replaces a single character of any value. The asterisk replaces one or more alphanumeric characters of any value.

For example, if A-**-1 is entered as the filter, the configurations displayed will be all those with device tags starting with A-, followed by any combination of characters (e.g., XYZ, S2, 3R) followed by a dash, followed by any single character (e.g., 1, D, M), and ending with a 1. The tags A-M1-B1, A-N2-Z1, or A-SF-X1 would display, whereas the tags BA53, PT101, or ATT48 would not display.
XPAND

The XPAND function key allows a user to view the Tag, Descriptor, and Name for the configuration being edited or viewed. Selecting Compress restores the previous compressed display, which shows only the current Tag, Descriptor, or Name.

3. With the Module Contents or Data Pack Contents menu displayed, press the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key to open the Saved Configuration menu for a device that was highlighted (at right).

**Edit** – displays the Edit menu, providing the same functions as described under “Edit individually” in Section 2.5.1.1. When editing off-line, only stored data may be edited. Moreover, data stored as a Partial configuration must be converted to a Standard configuration, then saved, prior to editing.

**Copy To...** – specifies the storage location for a copy of the configuration. Copy To... also provides a way to change the configuration name.

**Send** – sends a saved configuration to a connected device.

**Print** – not implemented with firmware release 1.6.

**Delete** – removes a saved configuration from memory. A confirmation message appears. Press Yes or No to complete the function.

**Rename** – provides access to the configuration name editing menu. After making name changes, enter and save the data to return to the previous storage location menu.

**Compare** – compares a selected device configuration from a stored location with other device configurations. The HART Communicator can compare device types, variables, marked lists, and other configuration parameters. Messages appear indicating if the configurations compared are the same or different.
2.5.2 Online Menu

The Online menu permits a Model 340 Transmitter to be tested and configured while it is operating. Options available through the Online menu are summarized in Figure 2-5. The Online menu is displayed immediately if a device description for the connected device exists in the Communicator. If not, the Generic Online menu is displayed (see Figure 2-6).

Main Menu
From the Main menu, with a HART-compatible device connected, press “2” to access the Online menu (at right). The Online menu displays the name of the device at the top of the LCD, if it is a supported device. If a device description for the connected device is not present in the Communicator, contact the manufacturer of the device.

When no device description is found, the Communicator provides a generic interface, which enables users to perform functions common to all HART-compatible devices. Model 340-specific menu options are described in detail in Sections 3 and 6.

Generic Menu

The Generic Online menu (at right) is the first menu in the generic interface. It displays critical, up-to-date device information. Configuration parameters for the connected device may be accessed using the Device setup option. Figure 2-6 shows the complete Generic Online menu tree.

From the Online menu, use the options below to change device configurations.

Device setup – provides access to the Device Setup menu. Configurable device parameters common to all HART-compatible devices can be accessed from this menu.

Primary Variable (PV) – the dynamic primary variable and the related engineering unit. When the primary variable contains too many characters to display on the Online menu, access the PV menu to view the primary variable and related engineering units by pressing “1.”

Analog Output (AO) – the dynamic output and the related engineering units. The analog output is a signal on the 4-20 mA scale that corresponds to the primary variable. When analog output contains too many characters to display on the Online menu, access the PV AO Menu to view the analog output and related engineering unit by pressing “3.”
1 Loop Override  
2 Calibrate/Test  
3 Configure Xmtr

1 Self Test  
2 Calibrate  
1 Write protect  
1 Enable  
2 Disable

2 Sensor Input  
1 MV Units  
2 MV Lo  
3 MV Hi  
4 Damping  
5 Transfer Fct  
6 Transfer Fct Cutoff  
7 Zero Dropout  
8 Active Input  
1 MV  
2 MV Lo  
3 MV Hi  
1 Linear  
2 Square Root  
3 3/2 Power  
4 5/2 Power

3 Totalizer Block  
1 Fullscale value  
2 Timebase  
3 Multiplier  
4 Units  
5 Zero Dropout  
6 Local display

4 Characterizer  
1 Characterizer  
2 Characterizer Posi  
3 X1  
4 Y1  
1 OFF  
2 ON  
5-10 ETC.

5 Operator Display  
1 PV Units  
2 PV Lo  
3 PV Hi  
4 AutoRerange  
5 Local Units  
6 Autotoggle  
7 Toggle Time  
6 Local display  
1 % Range  
2 PV Units  
3 MV Units  
4 %, MV and PV  
5 Totalizer Only

6 Transmitter ID  
1 Tag  
2 Descriptor  
3 Message  
4 Date  
5 Device S/N  
6 Polling addr  
1 Alarm 1  
2 A1 Setpoint  
3 A1 Type  
4 Alarm 2  
5 A2 Setpoint  
6 A2 Type  
7 Self Clear NAK  
8 Out of Service

7 Output Block  
1 Failsafe Level

8 Alarm Block  
1 Tracking SP  
2 PUSP  
1 Controller  
2 Type  
3 Action  
4 PG  
5 TI  
6 TD  
7 DG

9 SP Track & Hold  
1 Tracking SP  
2 PUSP  
1 Controller  
2 Type  
3 Action  
4 PG  
5 TI  
6 TD  
7 DG

A/M Transfer  
1 Power-Up Mode  
2 Auto Only  
3 PUV  
8 MR  
9 MR Tracking

Controller

FIGURE 2-5  Online Menu Tree for Model 340 Transmitter
**FIGURE 2-6  Generic Online Menu Tree**

**Lower Range Value (LRV)** – the current lower range value and the related engineering unit. When the lower range value contains too many characters to display on the Online menu, access the PV LRV Menu to view the lower range value and related engineering unit by pressing “4.”

**Upper Range Value (URV)** – the current upper range value and the related engineering unit. When the lower range value contains too many characters to display on the Online menu, access the PV URV Menu to view the upper range value and related engineering unit by pressing “5.”
2.5.3 Frequency Device Menu

From the Main menu, press “3” to access the Frequency Device menu. This menu displays the frequency output and corresponding pressure output for current-to-pressure devices. For Model 340 transmitters, the display frequency and pressure values are both “none.”

2.5.4 Utility Menu

From the Main menu, press “4” to access the Utility menu (at right). This menu provide functions that affect the operation of the Communicator, not the connected devices.

2.5.4.1 Configure Communicator

From the Utility Menu, press “1” to access the Configure Communicator menu (below right). Use this menu to set the polling, adjust the contrast of the LCD, set the Communicator shutoff time, or set how many diagnostics messages to ignore before a warning message is displayed.

Use the Polling option to direct the HART Communicator to search for a connected device. The Communicator finds every device in the loop and lists them by tag number. If Polling is Never Poll, then the Communicator will not find a connected device.

The Contrast menu is used to change the LCD contrast. Contrast returns to the default value when the Communicator is turned off.

Off Time is used to set the Communicator to turn off automatically when not in use to conserve battery power.

The Communicator normally displays diagnostic messages from a connected device. The Ignore Diagnostics option permits the user to specify the number of messages to ignore so that messages will not be displayed as often, extending the time between displayed messages. The message count defaults to a nominal count of 50 each time the Communicator is turned on.
2.5.4.2 System Information

From the Utility menu, press “2” to access the System Information menu (at right). This menu can be used to provide information on the motherboard (e.g., firmware revision number), the module hardware and software characteristics, and the Data Pack EEPROM.

2.5.4.3 Listen for PC

Not implemented in firmware release 1.6.

2.5.4.4 Storage Location

From the Utility menu, the Storage Location menu (at right) provides access to data concerning the Memory Module or the Data Pack. Information available through this menu includes a label for the Memory Module or Data Pack, a feature that displays the total storage used (bytes) and the storage remaining (“free” bytes). The PC selection is not implemented in firmware release 1.6.

2.5.4.5 Simulation

The HART Communicator provides a mode that allows users to simulate an on-line connection to a HART-compatible device without connecting to the device. The simulation mode is a training tool that allows users to become familiar with different devices before configuring them in a critical environment.

Simulation of an on-line connection is done by selecting a manufacturer from the Manufacturer menu, then selecting a device from the Model menu, just as is done when on-line. After selecting a software revision, the Online menu for the simulated device is displayed. Functions are the same as those available when on-line.
2.6 USING THE QUICK ACCESS KEY

Pressing the Quick Access Key (Hot Key) while on-line displays the Quick Access Key menu, a user-definable menu that provides immediate access to up to 20 frequently performed tasks. The Quick Access Key menu is accessible when the Communicator is powered and on-line, or when the Communicator is off, by simply pressing the Quick Access Key. For the Quick Access Key to be active, the Communicator must be connected properly to a HART-compatible device.

From the factory, the Quick Access Key menu includes (for Model 340 only):

- **XMTR Variables** – View such variables as percent range, process value, set point, and valve.
- **Status** – Determine model number and other transmitter identification information, errors, alarm status, and totalizer status.
- **Totalizer Control** – Stop, start, reset, and clear the totalizer.
- **PID Control** – Change setpoint, change valve, change mode from auto to manual, and tune controller
- **Range Xmtr** – Choose measured variable and process variable units, set high and low values, auto rerange, and choose a transfer function

Use of these functions is described in Section 6.1.3. More options can be added to provide rapid access to frequently performed tasks. User-defined options can be deleted later, but the five factory options are permanent.

To use the Quick Access Key:

1. Connect the Communicator to a HART-compatible device.
2. Press the Quick Access Key (upper right-hand key in the action keys group). The Communicator will power-up and display the Quick Access Key menu (at right).

   Before any custom options have been installed, the Quick Access Key menu displays only the five factory-installed options. To add options, see Section 2.6.1.

3. Use the UP and DOWN arrows followed by the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key to choose an option, or press the option’s number on the keypad. The menu for the chosen option displays.
4. Follow the instructions given in Section 6.1.3 to use the option selected.
5. When finished, press the Quick Access Key to return to the previous menu.
2.6.1 Adding Quick Access Key Options

The Quick Access Key menu contains space for up to 20 on-line options. For example, if device tags and damping must be changed often, simply add both of them to the menu. The Communicator automatically saves them so they can be accessed quickly by pressing the Quick Access Key.

From one of the menus or submenus reached via the Online menu, use the following steps to add customized options to the Quick Access Key Menu:

1. Using the UP or DOWN arrow keys, move the menu bar to highlight the option to be added to the Quick Access Key menu (e.g., Damping, under the Configure Xmtr\Sensor Input menu).

2. Press any shift key, release it, then press the Quick Access Key. The Hotkey Configuration menu displays (at right).

   The Hotkey Configuration menu displays the new topic being added to the list of current Quick Access Key options. For example, in the figure at right, Damping is being added.

3. Press ADD (F3) to add the option. Pressing EXIT (F4) terminates the procedure and displays the menu that was displayed when “Shift,” Quick Access Key was pressed.

4. After pressing ADD (F3), either press ALL (F1) to add the new option to the Quick Access Key menu for all the HART-compatible devices supported by the Communicator or press ONE (F4) to add the option to the Quick Access Key Menu only for the type of device that is currently connected.

5. Next, the question “Mark as read-only variable on Quick Access Key menu?” may appear. Press YES (F1) to mark the variable for this option as read-only. Press NO (F4) to mark the variable as read/write. Marking a parameter for a device as read-only allows users to view, but not change, the parameter using the Quick Access Key Menu. Marking it as read/write permits the value to be changed from the Quick Access Key menu.

   Finally, “Display value of variable on hotkey menu?” is displayed. Press YES (F1) to display the current variable associated with the option next to the option on the Quick Access Key menu as shown at right for Damping and Tag. Press NO (F2) not to display the variable on the Quick Access Key menu.

6. When finished adding options, press EXIT (F4) to exit the Hotkey Configuration menu and return to the menu of the last option deleted.
2.6.2 Deleting Quick Access Key Options

Use the following steps to delete an option from the Quick Access Key menu:

1. From any on-line menu, press any shift key, release it, then press the Quick Access Key.

2. The Hotkey Configuration menu displays (at right).

3. Using the UP or DOWN arrow key, move the menu bar to highlight the option to be deleted and press DEL (F2). Factory-provided options cannot be deleted.

4. When finished deleting options, press EXIT (F4) to exit the Hotkey Configuration menu and return to the menu of the last option deleted.

MPCO 340A:PT100
Hotkey Configuration
ADD: Descriptor
PID Control
Range Xmtr
Damping
Tag
DEL | ADD | EXIT
3.0 COMMISSIONING AND BENCH TESTING

Before operating a Model 340 on-line, the instrument should be set up either at the bench or in the field and commissioned using the HART Communicator. Commissioning consists of checking that the transmitter is operational and that all configuration information is correct. For an in-depth discussion of transmitter configuration, refer to Section 6 On-Line Configuration and Operation.

3.1 COMMISSIONING PROCEDURE

A Model 340 can be commissioned either before or after installation. Commissioning on the bench before installation is recommended. A complete transmitter functional test can be performed and configuration procedures can be practiced. If commissioning after installation, install the transmitter as described in Section 4, then return to this section.

To commission the transmitter on the bench, make the connections shown in Figure 3-1. For commissioning in the field, use either the set-up shown in Figure 3-2 or the appropriate figure in Section 4.

![Figure 3-1 Bench Test Connections](image_url)

Note: Loop current can also be displayed on optional Smart Display in 0-100%.
Notes:
1. Remove jumper between Circuit Junction terminals 1 and 2 and connect DMM as shown. Reconnect jumper after disconnecting DMM.
2. Loop current can also be shown on transmitter’s optional Smart Display in 0-100%.

FIGURE 3-2 Field Test Connections

3.1.1 Test Equipment Needed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TEST EQUIPMENT</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION (see Specifications, Section 9.3.2)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Power Supply</td>
<td>10 to 42 Vdc, see Section 4.3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multimeter:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current</td>
<td>Range: 4 to 20 mA to measure loop current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage</td>
<td>Range: 10-50 Vdc to measure power supply and loop voltage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Sense Resistor</td>
<td>250 to 1100Ω to support HART digital communications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Device</td>
<td>HART Communicator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE

Test equipment should be 2 to 10 times more accurate than the transmitter accuracy.
3.2 ESTABLISHING COMMUNICATION

1. Connect the transmitter, power supply, and HART Communicator in a loop.
2. Apply power to the transmitter.
3. Press the HART Communicator’s ON/OFF key. The first display is the Online menu (at right).
4. If the Online menu does not appear, or if a “Device not found” message displays, check connections and try again.

3.3 TESTING THE TRANSMITTER

Although a Model 340 Transmitter continuously performs an online self-test, a more extensive self-test can be performed when communication with the HART Communicator has been established.

1. From the Online menu, choose option 2, Calibrate/Test to display the Calibrate and Test selections.
2. From the Calibrate/Test menu, choose option 1, Selftest. Press the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key to start the test.
3. The Communicator will display a warning screen (at right). If a process might be harmed by a change in transmitter output, press “1,” ABORT to stop the test. If it is okay to proceed, press “2,” CONTINUE.
4. The transmitter performs the self-test.
   - If testing is successful, the message “Transmitter PASSED the transmitter selftest” displays.
   - If testing fails, the message “Transmitter FAILED the transmitter selftest” displays, and the transmitter goes to the prescribed failsafe condition.
5. Press OK (F4) to acknowledge the test results and display the Calibrate/Test menu.

3.4 REVIEWING CONFIGURATION DATA

Before placing a transmitter in service, use the HART Communicator to check that the proper configuration information has been stored.

1. Establish communication as described in Section 3.2.
2. From the Online menu, press “3” to view the Configure Xmtr menu (at right). For each of the function blocks on this menu, check to see if each of the parameters is set to the correct value as recorded in user documentation of parameters (Appendix C). See Section 6 for detailed information on changing function block parameters.
3. For each function block, perform the following steps:
   1) Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to highlight the function block. Press the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key to view the function block options.
   2) Examine each of the options on the function block menu, changing values if necessary. When the first change is made, the SAVE softkey changes to SEND.

4. When all configuration parameters have been examined and changed as needed, press SEND to download the configuration to the transmitter. The SEND softkey changes to SAVE.

5. If this configuration will be used for other transmitters, save the configuration to either the Memory Module or Data Pack by pressing SAVE (F3) from the Configure Xmtr menu or any of its submenus.

### 3.5 CHECKING TRANSMITTER OUTPUT

After the transmitter configuration has been confirmed and adjusted if necessary, check to be sure that the transmitter is reading the proper pressure in the proper units. Use a dead weight tester or other acceptable plant pressure standard to apply 0, 25, 50, 75, and 100% of input values to the transmitter. Check that the corresponding outputs are 4, 8, 12, 16, and 20 mA.

With the transmitter configured properly, and with the test equipment in place, perform the following steps:

1. Connect the HART Communicator and press the Quick Access Key.

2. From the Quick Access Key menu, choose 1 XMTR Variables to view the current transmitter output (at right).

3. Apply pressure representing 0% of the configured range. Wait at least 5 seconds.

4. Choose “6” to see the current display. The current should read 4.00 mA.

5. Repeat steps 1-4 for pressures representing 25, 50, 75, and 100% of the configured range. Check for the corresponding pressure readings and current values.

This completes commissioning and bench testing of the transmitter.
4.0 INSTALLATION

Transmitter installation is discussed in this section. Topics include: equipment delivery and handling, environmental and installation considerations, and mechanical and electrical installation.

IMPORTANT

Before installing or servicing a transmitter:

• Read the information on the nameplate and ensure that the correct model is at hand and that the correct procedures are followed. See Section 9.1, Model Designations for an explanation of the model designation alphanumeric sequence shown on the nameplate.

• The installation must conform to the National Electrical Code and all other applicable construction and electrical codes. Refer to the installation drawings in Appendix B when locating a transmitter in a hazardous area.

• Refer to Section 9.3.6 Special Conditions for Safe Use for approval agency requirements that affect installation and use of the instrument. Refer to Appendix E for CENELEC for EEx d installations.

4.1 EQUIPMENT DELIVERY AND HANDLING

4.1.1 Factory Shipment

Prior to shipment, a transmitter is fully tested and inspected to ensure proper operation. It is then packaged for shipment. Most accessories are shipped separately. Everything in a box is indicated on the box label.

4.1.2 Receipt of Shipment

Each carton should be inspected at the time of delivery for possible external damage. Any visible damage should be recorded immediately on the carrier’s copy of the delivery slip.

Each carton should be unpacked carefully and its contents checked against the enclosed packing list. At the same time, each item should be inspected for any hidden damage that may or may not have been accompanied by exterior carton damage.

If it is found that some items have been damaged or are missing, notify Moore Products Co. immediately and provide full details. In addition, damage must be reported to the carrier with a request for their on-site inspection of the damaged item and its shipping carton.

4.1.3 Storage

If a transmitter is to be stored for a period prior to installation, review the environmental specifications in Section 9.3.

4.2 ENVIRONMENTAL CONSIDERATIONS

Many industrial processes create severe environmental conditions. The conditions at each transmitter location must be within the specifications stated in Section 9.3.
Although the transmitter is designed to perform in harsh conditions, it is prudent to choose a location that minimizes the effects of heat, vibration, shock, and electrical interference.

**CAUTION**

Exceeding the specified operating temperature limits can adversely affect performance and may damage the instrument.

### 4.3 INSTALLATION CONSIDERATIONS

Sections 4.3.1 and 4.3.2 outline basic considerations needed to achieve a successful mechanical/ electrical installation. The remaining sections then provide detailed pre-installation information.

#### 4.3.1 Mechanical

- XTC transmitters are suitable for, but not limited to:
  - Flow Measurement
  - Gauge Pressure Measurement
  - Level Measurement
  - Draft Pressure Measurement
  - Absolute Pressure Measurement
  - High Differential Pressure Measurement
  - Hydrostatic Tank Gauging Measurement
- Determine if an optional Smart Display for local monitoring of transmitter output is required. Refer to Section 9.1 for model designation or 9.2 for accessory part numbers.
- Determine physical mounting of the transmitter. Consider:
  - Optional brackets for pipe mounting or surface mounting
  - Pipe or tank wall thickness, diameter, rigidity, and freedom from vibration
  - Clearance for installation and maintenance and for reading the optional Smart Display
  - Need to rotate Smart Display for viewing ease

Refer to Figures 9-1, 9-2, and 4-14 for transmitter dimensions and the figures in Sections 4.4 and 4.5 for typical mechanical installations. Refer to Section 9.3 for mechanical and environmental specifications.

- Determine if an explosion-proof or intrinsically safe installation is required. Refer to transmitter nameplate for electrical classifications and to Sections 4.8 and 9.3.

An intrinsically safe installation requires user-supplied intrinsic safety barriers that must be installed in accordance with barrier manufacturer’s instructions for the specific barriers used.

Transmitter certification is based on the “entity” concept in which the user selects barriers that permit the system to meet the entity parameters.
• Models 340 D, A, and G – Consider pressure piping recommendations. Refer to Section 4.3.3.
• Determine conduit routing. Refer to Section 4.6.2.
• Consider bolting the transmitter to a two- or three-valve manifold.

Model 340D – Install a three-valve manifold because this device provides both an equalizing valve and high and low pressure block valves. Use the equalizing valve to equalize pressure between inputs before calibrating or servicing the transmitter. Use block valves to isolate the transmitter from the process for servicing or removal.

Models 340A and G – Install a two-valve manifold for similar purposes to those listed above.

Model 340F – Consider using flushing rings to flush and clean the process connection without removing the flange.

Prepare installation site drawings showing the following:
• Location of the Master Device (e.g., HART Communicator or controller)
• Location and identification of each transmitter
• Routing plan of signal cable(s)
• Location of any signal cable junctions for connecting the HART Communicator

4.3.2 Electrical

• Determine transmitter operating mode (analog or digital) and type of Network needed; refer to Section 4.3.4.
• Determine minimum power supply requirements. Refer to Section 4.3.5.
• Select twinaxial cable type and determine maximum cable length. Refer to Section 4.3.6.
• Determine the need for network junctions. Refer to Section 4.3.7.
• Intrinsically Safe installations will need barriers. Refer to Section 4.3.8.
• Consider the effect of connecting additional equipment (e.g., recorder, loop powered display) to the network. Refer to Section 4.3.9.
• Read Section 4.3.10 for shielding and grounding recommendations.
4.3.3 Impulse Piping for Models 340D, A, and G

Impulse piping is the piping to be connected to the transmitter’s process connection(s). For suggested flow and level measurement piping arrangements, refer to:

- Model 340D - Figures 4-1 and 4-2
- Model 340A or G - Figures 4-3 and 4-4
- Model 340F - Figure 4-5

Note the following when planning and installing piping.

- Install impulse piping in accordance with ANSI Code B31.1.0.
- Make impulse piping length as short as possible to reduce frictional loss and temperature-induced pressure variations. However, when using impulse lines on a high temperature process, locate the transmitter far enough away from the heat source to keep it within temperature specifications [28°C (50°F) per foot cooling to a normal ambient is assumed for uninsulated impulse lines].
- For lines between the process and transmitter, use impulse piping of 3/8” OD or larger to avoid friction effects (causes lagging) and blockage.
- Use the least number of fittings and valves possible to minimize leakage problems. TFE/PTFE tape is the recommended thread sealant for process connections at the transmitter.
- Valves used in pressure service should be either globe or gate type. Valves used in gas service should be of a type that does not permit condensate to build up behind the valve.
- Install sediment chambers with drain valves to collect solids suspended in process liquids or moisture carried with non-condensing gases.
- Install air chambers with vent valves at high point in piping to vent gas entrained in process liquid.
- Remote diaphragm seals can be used to keep corrosive liquid or gas from the transmitter pressure inlets and isolation diaphragm (see PI34-6 for details).
- Alternatively, use sealing fluid to isolate the process from the transmitter. Sealing fluid must be of greater density than process fluid and non-miscible.
- For transmitters located above the process, slope piping from the transmitter at least 1 inch/foot (83 mm/M) down toward process. For transmitters below the process, slope piping at least 1 inch/foot (83 mm/M) up to process.
- Protect pressure lines (by shielding if necessary) from objects or equipment that may bend or kink the line causing fluid flow restriction.
- Protect the pressure lines from extreme temperature ranges. Lines should be protected from freezing by installing a heat trace.
- A three-valve manifold should be used with a Model 340D. A two-valve manifold can be used with a Model 340A or G transmitter to permit servicing and zero checks.
Horizontal Main Line Flow
Transmitter Below Orifice - Preferred for Liquids and Steam

Horizontal Main Line Flow
Transmitter Above Orifice - Preferred for Gas Flow

Vertical Main Line Flow
Transmitter Below Orifice

Vertical Main Line Flow
Transmitter Above Orifice

FIGURE 4-1 Differential Flow Measurement Piping for Gas and Liquid
FIGURE 4-2 Differential Liquid Measurement Piping

Notes:

1. Transmitter may be mounted at or below the minimum level to be measured.

2. Open or vented vessels require only a high pressure (HP) connection.

3. High pressure line senses static pressure plus level. Low pressure line senses pressure only. The two pressures oppose each other, canceling the effect of static pressure.

4. Distance "X" can be any distance since both high and low pressure lines have equal and opposite forces which cancel the forces created by this distance.

5. Entire length of low pressure pipe is kept full of condensate to act as a reference.

6. See Appendix D for information on calculating suppressed and elevated zero ranges.
FIGURE 4-3  Absolute or Gauge Pressure Measurement Piping

* Suppressed-Zero Range
  Non-Corrosive Dry Gases and Liquids

For liquids and steam, mounting below the line is preferred.

* Elevated Zero-Range
  Non-Corrosive Dry Gases and Liquids

For gases, mounting above the line is preferred.

Air Chamber with Vent Valve. Install at high point to collect air entrained in liquids.

* Sediment Chamber and Drain Valve.
  Used to collect solids in liquid suspension or moisture carried with non-condensing gas.

Elevated Zero-Range Wet Gases (Non-Condensing) and Liquids with Solids in Suspension

* Dripleg with Drain Valve.
  Used to collect solids in liquid suspension or moisture carried with non-condensing gases.

Suppressed Zero-Range Wet Gases (Non-Condensing) and Liquids with Solids in Suspension
FIGURE 4-4  Steam Service, Below the Line Mounting
Open Tank, Level Measurement

Closed Tank, Non-Condensing Atmosphere, Level Measurement

Closed Tank, Condensing Atmosphere, Level Measurement

Notes:
1. Transmitter may be mounted at or below the minimum level to be measured.
2. Open or vented vessels require only a high pressure (HP) connection.
3. High pressure line senses static pressure plus level. Low pressure line senses pressure only. The two pressures oppose each other, canceling the effect of static pressure.
4. Distance "X" can be any distance since both high and low pressure lines have equal and opposite forces which cancel the forces created by this distance.
5. Entire length of low pressure pipe is kept full of condensate to act as a reference.
6. See Appendix D for information on calculating suppressed and elevated zero ranges.

FIGURE 4-5 Open and Closed Tank Level Measurement, Flange Mounted Differential Transmitters
4.3.4 Transmitter Operating Mode and Network Type

A transmitter outputs either an analog current or an equivalent digital signal, depending upon the selected operating mode. The operating mode also determines the type of network (Point-to-Point or Multi-Drop) to be installed, as shown in Table 4.1 and the following subsections.

TABLE 4-1 Operating Mode and Network

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OPERATING MODE</th>
<th>NETWORK TYPE</th>
<th>NETWORK FIGURE(S)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Analog</td>
<td>Point-to-Point</td>
<td>4-6, 4-7, and 4-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Multi-Drop</td>
<td>4-9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3.4.1 Analog Mode

When a transmitter is configured for analog mode operation, the following statements apply.

- The transmitter outputs a 4-20 mA signal for input to devices such as controllers and recorders.
- A Point-to-Point network is used comprising a transmitter, Primary/Secondary Master, and other non-signaling devices. The transmitter polling address is 0 (zero).
  - Point-to-Point networks are shown in Figures 4-6, 4-7, and 4-8.
- The optional Smart Display can be used for local indication of transmitter output.
- Each transmitter is factory configured for analog mode unless otherwise ordered. The polling address is set to zero (0).
- A HART Communicator is used for configuration, diagnostics, and reporting the current process variable.
Notes:

1. The System Power supply is shown separate from the host input device. In practice, it may be part of the host input device. The host input device can be either a HART or non-HART signaling device, a Primary Master or Secondary Master.

2. Network resistance equals the sum of the barrier resistances and the current sense resistor. Minimum value 250 Ohms; maximum value 1100 Ohms.

3. Connect The HART Communicator as shown in Figure 2-2 for hazardous or non-hazardous locations. The HART Communicator is a non-polar device.

4. Supply and return barriers shown. Interconnect all cable shields and ground only at the barriers.

5. For access to Model 340 terminals, remove enclosure cap.

6. Maximum loop cable length calculated by formula in Section 4.3.

FIGURE 4-6  Point-To-Point Network (Analog Mode)
Notes:

1. Network resistance equals the sum of the barrier resistances and the current sense resistor. Minimum value 250 Ohms; maximum value 1100 Ohms.

2. Connect the HART Communicator as shown in Figure 2-2 for hazardous or non-hazardous locations. The HART Communicator is a non-polar device.

3. Supply and return barriers shown. Interconnect all cable shields and ground only at the barriers.

4. Model 353 or Model 354 terminal assignments:
   - 20 - Analog Input 1 (AIN1+)
   - 21 - Analog Input Common (AINC)
   - 5 - Two-Wire Transmitter Power (+26 Vdc)
   - 6 - Station Common
   - GND - Case/Safety Ground

5. For access to Model 340 terminals, remove enclosure cap.

6. Maximum loop cable length calculated by formula in Section 4.3.

FIGURE 4-7 Model 353/354 to Model 340 Connections (Analog Mode)
Notes:

1. Model 340 configured as a Transmitter-Controller (Controller Function Block ON).
   
   TIE terminal isolated from ground and from plus (+) and minus (-) terminals.
   
   For access to Transmitter terminals, remove enclosure cap closest to the electrical conduit entrances.

2. The System Power Supply may be part of a host input device or a separate device as shown.

3. Network resistance equals the sum of the barrier resistances and the current sense resistor.
   Minimum value 250 Ohms; maximum value 1100 Ohms.

4. Supply and return barriers shown.

5. Interconnect all cable shields and ground only at the barriers.

6. Maximum loop cable length calculated by formula in Section 4.3.6.

7. HART Communicator is a non-polar device.
   
   Before connecting in a hazardous location, check Communicator nameplate for approvals.

FIGURE 4-8 Wiring for Controller Operation
4.3.4.2 Digital Mode

When a transmitter is configured for digital mode operation, the following statements apply.

- The process variable is transmitted digitally. The analog output of each transmitter is “parked” at 4 mA.
- Employs a Multi-Drop network. See Figure 4-9.
- The optional Smart Display can be used for local indication of transmitter output.

The number of allowable network elements is:
- Primary and Secondary Masters - 1 each
- Transmitters - 1 to 15
- The HART communication source can be a Primary or Secondary Master. A Primary Master can be used for data acquisition, maintenance, or control purposes. A Secondary Master, the HART Communicator, for example, may be used for configuration, diagnostics, and reporting current process variable.
- Place the transmitter in the digital mode by assigning it a polling address (1 to 15) when configuring the Transmitter ID block with the HART Communicator (see Section 6).
- Each transmitter must have a unique address.

4.3.5 Power Supply Requirements

A power supply is needed to power the transmitter(s). The power supply can be:

- A separate stand-alone supply capable of powering several transmitters. It can be mounted in a control room or in the field. Follow the power supply manufacturer’s recommendations with regard to mounting and environmental considerations.
- Located in a controller (such as a Primary Master) or other station able to safely provide additional operating current and meet the power supply specifications of Section 9.3.

Determine needed power supply output voltage by calculating the Network Resistance and consulting the adjacent figure. It shows the minimum power supply voltage needed for the calculated Network Resistance.

The total Network Resistance is the sum of the Current Sense Resistance, end-to-end Barrier Resistance (if used), wire resistance, and any other resistances in the loop. The minimum Network Resistance (see Glossary) required to support HART communications is 250Ω. The maximum resistance is 1100Ω.
Notes:

1. The System Power Supply is shown separate from the host input device. In practice, it may be part of the host input device. The host input device can either be a HART or non-HART signaling device, a Primary Master or Secondary Master.

2. Network resistance equals the sum of the barrier resistances and the current sense resistor. Minimum value 250 Ohms; maximum value 1100 Ohms.

3. A maximum of 15 transmitters may be connected. All must be configured for digital mode.

4. Connect the HART Communicator as shown in Figure 2-2 for hazardous or non-hazardous locations. The HART Communicator is a non-polar device.

5. Supply and return barriers shown. Interconnect all cable shields and ground only at the barriers.

6. For access to Model 340 terminals, remove enclosure cap.

FIGURE 4-9 Multi-Drop Network (Digital Mode)
4.3.5.1 Point-to-Point Network

The graph in Section 4.3.5 defines an analog mode transmitter’s operating region for the allowable ranges of supply voltage and network resistance. Perform the following calculations to ensure that the power supply output voltage permits the transmitter to remain within the indicated operating range.

1. Calculate the minimum power supply output voltage.

   The minimum network power supply voltage requirement is a function of Network Resistance and full scale current (20 mA), and is calculated by the following formula:

   \[ \text{Minimum Power Supply Output Voltage} = 10 \text{ volts} + (0.02 \times \text{Network Resistance in ohms}) \]

   Power supply output voltage must be greater than the calculated value. The minimum voltage across the input terminals of a transmitter is 10 volts.

2. Calculate the maximum power supply output voltage.

   The maximum network power supply voltage is a function of Network Resistance and zero scale current (4 mA), and is calculated by the following formula:

   \[ \text{Maximum Power Supply Output Voltage} = 42 \text{ volts} + (0.004 \times \text{Network Resistance in ohms}) \]

   Power supply output voltage must be less than the calculated value. The maximum voltage permitted across the input terminals of a transmitter is 42 volts.

4.3.5.2 Multi-Drop Network

Perform the following simple calculations to ensure that the power supply output voltage permits the Transmitter to remain within its operating range.

1. Calculate the minimum power supply output voltage.

   Minimum network power supply voltage is a function of Network Resistance and the total current draw of all transmitters in the network, and is calculated by the following formula:

   \[ \text{Minimum Supply Output Voltage} = 10 \text{ volts} + [(0.004 \times \text{number of transmitters on Network}) \times (\text{Network Resistance})] \]

   Power supply output voltage must be greater than the calculated value. The minimum voltage across the input terminals of a transmitter is 10 volts.

2. Calculate the maximum power supply output voltage.

   Maximum network power supply voltage is a function of Network Resistance and total current draw of all the transmitters in the network, and is calculated by the following formula:

   \[ \text{Maximum Supply Output Voltage} = 42 \text{ volts} + [(0.004 \times \text{number of transmitters on Network}) \times (\text{Network Resistance})] \]

   Power supply output voltage must be less than the calculated value. The maximum voltage permitted across the input terminals of a transmitter is 42 volts.

The maximum number of transmitters that can be connected to a Multi-Drop Network is 15. Each transmitter is “parked” in a low current draw mode (4 mA) to conserve power. Ensure that the network power supply is capable of sourcing the total current consumed by the number of transmitters on the network.
4.3.6 Cable Capacitance and Maximum Length

A cable length calculation is necessary when HART communication is to be employed. Cable capacitance directly affects maximum network length.

4.3.6.1 Cable Capacitance

Cable type, conductor size, and recommended cable model numbers are stated in Section 9.3.3 Two-Wire Cable.

Cable capacitance is a parameter used in the calculation of the maximum length of cable that can be used to construct the network. The lower the cable capacitance the longer the network can be. Manufacturers typically list two capacitance values for an instrumentation cable:

1. Capacitance between the two conductors.
2. Capacitance between one conductor and the other conductor(s) connected to shield. This capacitance is the worst case value and is to be used in the cable length formula.

4.3.6.2 Maximum Cable Length Calculation

The maximum permissible single-pair cable length is 10,000 feet (3000 meters) or less as determined by the following formula:

\[
L = \frac{65,000,000}{R \times C} - \frac{C_f + 10,000}{C}
\]

**Formula Definitions:**
- **L**: The maximum total length of cable permitted to construct the network. L = feet when C is in pF/ft; L = meters when C is in pF/meter.
- **R**: The Network Resistance which is the ohmic sum of the current sense resistance and barrier resistance (both return and supply), if any, in the network and the resistance of the wire.
- **C**: Cable capacitance per unit length between one conductor and the other conductor connected to the shield. C may be in pF/ft or pF/meter.
- **C_f**: Total input terminal capacitance of field instruments; the Primary Master is excluded. C_f is given by the following formula:

\[
C_f = (\text{sum of all } C_n \text{ values}) \times 5000
\]

Where \( C_n \) is an integer (e.g., 1, 2, 3) corresponding to the input terminal capacitance of a Field Instrument. \( C_n \) values are determined as follows:
FIELD INSTRUMENT CAPACITANCE \( C_n \) VALUE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capacitance Range</th>
<th>( C_n ) Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Less than 5000 pF</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5000 pF to less than 10000 pF</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10000 pF to less than 15000 pF</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15000 pF to less than 20000 pF</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20000 pF to less than 25000 pF</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For field instruments without \( C_n \) values, use \( C_n = 1 \)

Example Calculation:

Assume a network consists of two field instruments (both \( C_n = 1 \)).

Let \( R = 250 \Omega \), \( C = 40 \text{ pF/ft} \), \( C_f = (1 + 1) \times 5000 = 10,000 \)

\[
65,000,000 - \frac{10,000 + 10,000}{(250)(40)} \quad 40 = 6000 \text{ feet (1800 meters)}
\]

4.3.7 Network Junctions

A network junction is shown in Figure 4-8. It is a wiring junction installed at a convenient point in the loop to facilitate wiring, testing, and troubleshooting. Typically the junction is a conventional terminal block mounted on a panel with a protective cover, cabinet, or junction box to enclose and protect wiring terminals.

Multiple junctions can be installed to provide field access terminals for the connection of a HART Communicator. Note the following:

- Network with barriers – Locate a junction anywhere along the network in the non-hazardous area.
- Network without barriers – A junction may be located anywhere along the network between the power supply and transmitter.
- A junction should be a simple electrical series connection containing NO repeaters or other devices (active or passive) that can degrade HART communications.
4.3.8 Safety Barriers

Installed safety barriers must comply with the following:

- Locate intrinsic safety barriers between the system power supply (e.g., Primary Master, if used) residing in the non-hazardous area and the transmitter(s) in the hazardous area.
- Combined or separate supply and return barriers may be used.
- For an intrinsically safe application, the DC voltage applied to the safe side of the barrier must be 0.6 Vdc less than the rated barrier working voltage.
- An active supply barrier must be operated within its specified input working voltage.
- Barrier shunt impedance to ground to the HART range of frequencies (500 Hz to 2500 Hz) shall not be less than 5000Ω.
- Barrier end-to-end resistance, stated by the manufacturer, is used in calculating the maximum Network cable length and minimum and maximum network voltages.
- The barrier shall be installed and wired in accordance with the manufacturers instructions.
- Refer to Appendix B for a list of barriers tested for use with typical HART Primary Masters.

4.3.9 Connection of Miscellaneous Hardware

Miscellaneous non-signaling hardware (e.g., recorders, current meters) may be connected to a Point-to-Point network in accordance with the following list.

**IMPORTANT**

No non-signaling hardware (meters or measuring devices) may be connected to a Multi-Drop network since the transmitters, in this mode, do not output an analog process variable.

- Miscellaneous hardware may be series or parallel connected to the network according to its function.
- Miscellaneous hardware must be passive two-terminal devices.
- Miscellaneous hardware may not generate any type of noise or signals, other than noise that is inherent in resistive components.
- Individual miscellaneous hardware must meet the following requirements:
  - Capacitance to ground ....................... 50 pF maximum
  - Resistance to ground ........................ 1 MΩ minimum
  - Impedance if series connected ............. Less than 10Ω
  - Impedance if parallel connected.......... Greater than 50kΩ
The maximum number of miscellaneous devices per network is 16. The combined electrical characteristics may not exceed the following:

- Maximum capacitance to ground ...................... 800 pF
- Minimum resistance to ground .......................... 62.5kΩ
- Maximum series impedance ................................ .160Ω
- Minimum parallel impedance ............................. 3125Ω

4.3.10 Shielding and Grounding

GROUNDING

Ground the transmitter’s enclosure housing through a 16 AWG (or larger) copper wire to a low resistance ground, such as a nearby metal cold water pipe. A screw is provided in the side of the housing for this purpose. The ground wire should be installed even though the housing is often grounded through the electrical conduit or, in some transmitter models, through the process connections and piping.

SHIELDING

Shielded loop cable is recommended. The preferred method of grounding that shield is shown in Figures 4-6 through 4-9.

Ground the cable shield at one point. Multiple grounds can cause signal error and poor HART performance. The location of the ground connection is often determined by the installation environment (hazardous or non-hazardous) or by the requirements of a regulating agency.

The following grounding practices are field proven and will reduce magnetically coupled interference. Select the appropriate option from the three bulleted items below for the installation at hand.

- Hazardous location - ground the shield(s) only at the barrier(s) or as recommended on the appropriate control (installation) drawing and by the certifying agency.
- Non-hazardous location - ground the shield at the network power supply.
  - Ground the cable shield to the power supply ground terminal. Do not connect the cable shield at the transmitter.
  - If a network junction box is used, splice the input and output cable shields and isolate them from ground.
- Non-hazardous location - ground the shield at the Transmitter
  - Ground the cable shield at the ground screw inside the transmitter’s signal terminal compartment.
  - Power supply (+) and (-) connections must be floated.
  - If a network junction box is used, splice input and output shields and isolate them from ground.
4.4 MECHANICAL INSTALLATION, MODELS 340D, A, AND G

This section describes the mechanical installation of a transmitter and the installation of electrical conduit for wiring. Transmitter dimensions are given in Figures 9-1, 9-2, and 4-14 and Table 4-2. Related mounting information for optional mounting bracket kits is provided in Figures 4-10, 4-11, 4-12, and 4-13. Table 1-1 cross-references model numbers and figure numbers.

Mount a transmitter in any position (orientation). The mounting position can cause a zero shift, however, any zero shift is simply calibrated out with the transmitter installed in its final mounting position. Refer to Section 7 Calibration and Maintenance for details.

Be sure to allow sufficient clearance for:

- Installation of impulse piping
- Installation of conduit
- Removal of the enclosure end cap
- Viewing of the optional Smart Display (enclosure can be rotated)

4.4.1 Pipe Mounting, Models 340D, A, and G

A transmitter can be mounted to a vertical or horizontal 2-inch pipe using an optional mounting bracket kit; kit part numbers are given in Section 9.2.

1. Refer to the appropriate figure and determine orientation of bracket and transmitter on selected pipe.

   Model 340D or 340A or G with tantalum diaphragm, 2" Pipe Mount Bracket and 316SS Bracket ............................................................... Figure 4-10

   Model 340A or G, 2" Pipe Mount Bracket and 316SS Bracket ................................. Figure 4-11

   Model 340D or Model 340A or G with tantalum diaphragm, Universal Bracket ............. Figure 4-12

   Model 340A or G, Universal Bracket ........................................................................... Figure 4-13

2. Fasten transmitter to mounting bracket. Perform one of the following depending upon transmitter model number and bracket at hand.

   Model 340D, 2" Pipe Mount Brackets

   1) Refer to Figure 4-10 and align a pair of holes in the transmitter end caps (manifold) with either of the two pairs of elongated holes in the bracket.

   2) Using the two supplied 7/16-20 x 3/4 bolts, secure the transmitter to the bracket.
Models 340A and G, 2" Pipe Mount Brackets

1) Note direction of pipe run, then refer to Figure 4-11 and orient the transmitter against the mounting bracket.

2) Install the supplied U-bolt, lockwashers, and nuts to secure the transmitter to the bracket.

Model 340D or Model 340A or G with Tantalum Diaphragm, Universal Bracket

1) Refer to Figure 4-12 and align a pair of holes in the transmitter end caps (manifold) with either of the two pairs of elongated holes in the bracket. If the transmitter has a Smart Display, be sure it can be viewed as this bracket limits enclosure rotation.

2) Using the two supplied 7/16-20 x 3/4 bolts, secure the transmitter to the bracket.

Models 340A and G, Universal Bracket

1) Refer to Figure 4-13 and orient the transmitter against the mounting bracket.

2) Install the Adapter Bracket using the supplied screws.

3) Using the supplied U-bolt, lockwashers, and nuts, install the transmitter to the bracket.

3. Fasten mounting bracket to pipe.

1) At the selected location on the pipe and in the desired orientation, place the pipe groove side of the mounting bracket against the desired part of the pipe surface.

   As necessary, loosen the enclosure rotation set screw and rotate the enclosure to clear the pipe or provide for viewing an optional Smart Display.

2) Slip the supplied U-bolt around the pipe and through one of the two pairs of mounting holes in the bracket.

3) Place a supplied washer and hex nut on each end of the U-bolt and hand tighten the nuts. Rotate the bracket around the pipe to place the transmitter in the desired position, then secure the bracket to the pipe. Do not over tighten nuts.

4. Reposition the optional Smart Display as necessary. Refer to Section 4.6.1.
Notes:

1. Includes 2” Pipe Mount 316SS Bracket.
   Standard mounting bracket is for Model 340D and Models 340A and G with tantalum diaphragms.

2. Dimensions are in inches (millimeters).


FIGURE 4-10  2” Pipe Mount Bracket, Model 340D (See Note 1)
Notes:

1. Includes 2" Pipe Mount 316SS Bracket.
   See Figure 4-10 for Model 340A or G with tantalum diaphragms.
2. Dimensions are in inches (millimeters).
3. Diaphragm plane for transmitter in adjacent orientation.

FIGURE 4-11  Pipe Mount Bracket, Models 340A and G (See Note 1)
4.4.2 Flat Surface Mounting, Models 340D, A, and G

The transmitter can be mounted to a flat surface using the Universal Mounting Bracket kit and user supplied 5/16-inch bolts.

Refer to either Figure 4-12 or 4-13 and the following for mounting guidance:

1. Fasten the mounting bracket to a flat surface.
   1) Determine transmitter location and orientation. Note: For Model 340D or Model 340A or G with tantalum diaphragm, if the transmitter has a Smart Display, be sure it can be viewed as this bracket limits enclosure rotation.
   2) Lay out the mounting hole pattern on the selected surface. Drill four mounting holes in the wall or plate (typically, 0.344-inch diameter to accept 5/16-inch bolts).
   3) Consider the thickness of the mounting surface and the selected mounting hardware (e.g., screw anchors, nuts and washers) in determining the required length of the mounting bolts.
   4) Place the pipe-groove side of the bracket against the mounting surface site and align the bracket and surface mounting holes. Install the bracket with user supplied 5/16-inch bolts, washers, and hex nuts.

2. Fasten the transmitter to the Mounting Bracket; refer to Section 4.4.1, step 2.
   As necessary, loosen the enclosure rotation set screw and rotate the enclosure for best viewing of the optional Smart Display.

3. Reposition the optional Smart Display as necessary. Refer to Section 4.6.1.
Notes:
1. Also shows Models 340A and 340G with tantalum diaphragm.
2. Dimensions are in inches (millimeters).

FIGURE 4-12 Universal Mounting Bracket, Model 340D (See Note 1)
Notes:
1. For a Model 340A or 340G with tantalum diaphragms, see Figure 4-12.
2. Dimensions are in inches (millimeters).

FIGURE 4-13 Universal Mounting Bracket, Models 340A and 340G (See Note 1)
4.4.3 Direct Mounting to Process, Model 340D

The transmitter can be interfaced to the process through a two- or three-valve manifold and supported by the piping connections (3-inch nipples) if mounted directly at the point of measurement.

Transmitter process connections are on 2.13-inch (54 mm) centers to allow direct mounting (bolting) to a manifold with the same spacing. Each transmitter process connection has two tapped 7/16-20 mounting holes and a 1/4 NPT tapped pressure inlet.

Process orifice flanges with standard 2.13-inch spacing permit a transmitter and two- or three-valve manifold combination to be direct mounted.

The procedure for mounting a transmitter to a two- or three-valve manifold, and the manifold to the orifice flanges, is covered by the installation instructions supplied by the manifold manufacturer. The following is a guide and may need to be modified for some installations. TFE/PTFE tape is the recommended thread sealant for process connections at the transmitter.

1. If installed, remove process connection blocks from the transmitter’s end caps (process manifold).
2. Press supplied O-ring seals into the grooves in the face of the two- or three-valve manifold and bolt the transmitter end caps to the transmitter side of the two- or three-valve manifold.
3. Thread ½” nipples of 3 inches (or less) length into the high- and low-pressure ports of the orifice flanges. Thread sealant must be used.
4. Thread the process connection blocks directly onto the nipples. Thread sealant must be used. The ½ NPT tapped hole in a process connection block is off center to accommodate 2-inch or 2.25-inch centers (Figure 9-1). For 2.13” pipe centers, the tapped holes should be offset to the right side.
5. Place the supplied TFE/PTFE gaskets on the connection blocks and bolt them to the manifold.
6. Reposition the optional Smart Display as necessary. Refer to Section 4.6.1.
4.5 MECHANICAL INSTALLATION, MODEL 340F

The Model 340F Transmitter can be flange mounted directly to the point of measurement on a vessel to provide a liquid level measurement. The flange-mounted diaphragm is factory assembled to the high-pressure side of the transmitter.

Figure 4-14 shows a typical Model 340F in an ANSI and metric flange. Table 4-2 includes the following mounting information:

- Flange thickness
- Flange diameter and pressure rating
- Number of flange mounting holes
- Flange mounting hole diameter
- Flange bolt circle diameter

Refer to Figure 4-14 and Table 4-2 when performing the following procedure:

1. Determine needed bolt length. The user must supply mounting bolts, nuts, and washers. Bolt length is determined by the combined thickness of the flange mounted on the vessel and the transmitter’s flange.

2. As necessary, loosen the enclosure rotation set screw and rotate the enclosure for clearance and best viewing of the optional Smart Display.

3. Bolt the transmitter’s flange to the vessel’s flange. Four mounting positions (90-degree increments) are possible with 2-inch flanges and eight positions (45-degree increments) are possible with 4-inch flanges.

4. Reposition the optional Smart Display as necessary. Refer to Section 4.6.1.
Notes:

1. Dimensions are in inches (millimeters). See table in text for dimensions that depend upon model number.

2. Diaphragm plane for transmitter in adjacent orientation.

FIGURE 4-14 Flange Mounted Transmitter, Model 340F
### Table 4-2 Flange and Extension Dimensions

#### A. Flange Dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIZE</th>
<th>DIM “D”</th>
<th>DIM “BC”</th>
<th>DIM “T”</th>
<th>DIM “ED”</th>
<th>DIM “RF”</th>
<th>BOLT DIA</th>
<th>NO. OF BOLTS</th>
<th>FLANGE PER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2” – 150#</td>
<td>6.00</td>
<td>4.75</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>1.95</td>
<td>1.95</td>
<td>5/8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(152.40)</td>
<td>(120.65)</td>
<td>(19.05)</td>
<td>(49.53)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2” – 300#</td>
<td>6.50</td>
<td>5.00</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>1.95</td>
<td>1.95</td>
<td>5/8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(165.10)</td>
<td>(127.00)</td>
<td>(22.23)</td>
<td>(49.53)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3” – 150#</td>
<td>7.50</td>
<td>6.00</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>2.81</td>
<td>2.81</td>
<td>5/8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(190.50)</td>
<td>(152.40)</td>
<td>(23.81)</td>
<td>(71.37)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3” – 300#</td>
<td>8.25</td>
<td>6.625</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>3.70</td>
<td>3.70</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(209.55)</td>
<td>(168.28)</td>
<td>(28.58)</td>
<td>(93.98)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4” – 150#</td>
<td>9.00</td>
<td>7.50</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>6.30</td>
<td>6.30</td>
<td>5/8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(228.60)</td>
<td>(190.50)</td>
<td>(23.81)</td>
<td>(160.00)</td>
<td>(160.00)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4” – 300#</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>7.875</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>7.48</td>
<td>7.48</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(254.00)</td>
<td>(200.03)</td>
<td>(31.75)</td>
<td>(24.00)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50MM – 10/16 BAR</td>
<td>6.50</td>
<td>4.92</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>Consult Factory</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>M16</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(165.00)</td>
<td>(125.00)</td>
<td>(18.00)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(3.00)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50MM – 25/40 BAR</td>
<td>6.50</td>
<td>4.92</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>Consult Factory</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>M16</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(165.00)</td>
<td>(125.00)</td>
<td>(20.00)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(3.00)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80MM – 10/16 BAR</td>
<td>7.87</td>
<td>6.30</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>Consult Factory</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>M16</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(200.00)</td>
<td>(160.00)</td>
<td>(20.00)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(3.00)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80MM – 25/40 BAR</td>
<td>7.87</td>
<td>6.30</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>Consult Factory</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>M16</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(200.00)</td>
<td>(160.00)</td>
<td>(24.00)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(3.00)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100MM – 10/16 BAR</td>
<td>8.66</td>
<td>7.09</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>Consult Factory</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>M16</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(220.00)</td>
<td>(180.00)</td>
<td>(20.00)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(3.00)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100MM – 25/40 BAR</td>
<td>9.25</td>
<td>7.48</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>Consult Factory</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>M20</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(235.00)</td>
<td>(190.00)</td>
<td>(24.00)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(3.00)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### B. Extension Length

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIM “L”</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>2.00</th>
<th>4.00</th>
<th>6.00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.00)</td>
<td>(50.80)</td>
<td>(101.60)</td>
<td>(152.40)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Dimensions are in inches (millimeters).
2. End cap can be rotated 180° for top or bottom vent/drain, side vent option only.
4.6 MECHANICAL INSTALLATION, ALL MODELS

The following subsections describe installation and orienting of the Smart Display and installation of electrical conduit and cables.

4.6.1 Smart Display Installation, Repositioning, and Removal

This section describes field installation and orientation of a Smart Display for easiest viewing. The display can be rotated in increments of 90 degrees.

Install a Smart Display:

1. Turn off power to the transmitter.
2. Remove the enclosure cap by turning counterclockwise.
3. Remove the Smart Display from its packaging.
4. While holding the Smart Display in front of the transmitter enclosure, rotate it in quarter turns to find the viewing position where reading is easiest. (Four positions, 90 degrees apart, are possible.)
5. Remove 2 screws at the perimeter of the electronics module inside the transmitter enclosure. Insert these screws in the Smart Display so that the screws align with the holes in the electronics module (Figure 4-15).
6. Bring the Smart Display close to the transmitter until the screws can be inserted loosely into the Module. Without tightening the screws, press gently on the Smart Display until it engages connector J1 on the electronics module and can be pushed no further.
7. Use a flat blade screwdriver to tighten the screws fully.
8. Install an enclosure cap with sightglass by turning clockwise. Tighten cap to compress the O-ring. Turn on power to the transmitter.

Rotate a Smart Display:

1. Turn off power to the transmitter.
2. Remove the enclosure cap with sightglass by turning counterclockwise.
3. Using a flat blade screwdriver, loosen the two screws holding the Smart Display. Lift the Smart Display, loosening the screws further if necessary, until it can be separated from the electronics module.
4. While holding the Smart Display in front of the transmitter enclosure, rotate it in quarter turns to find the viewing position where reading is easiest. (Four positions, 90 degrees apart, are possible.)
5. Observe the positions of the holes in the electronics module inside the transmitter. Depending on the mounting position chosen, it may be necessary to move the screws so they will line up with these holes.
Original Orientation  
Shown with Enclosure Cap Removed

Electrical Entrance  
Smart Display  
Meter Mounting Screw, Qty 2

Display Repositioned 180°

Electrical Entrance

Display Repositioned 90° CCW

Notes:
1. Display can be rotated in 90° increments.
2. Remove enclosure cap for access to the Display.
3. Display plugs into J1 on Electronics Module.

Display Orientation Examples

Electronics Module, Front View, Simplified

J1 Mates with 1 of 4 Display Connectors on back of Display Board - which connector depends upon Display orientation.

Magnetic Switch Jumper, Shown in Disable Position

Display Connector, 4 places

Smart Display: Front, Back

Display Details, Exploded View

Model 340 Enclosure, Top View

Loop Feedthrough, 2 places

Sensor Cable

Electronics Module

J1 and Mating Display Board Connector

Display Board

Top View, Sectioned

FIGURE 4-15 Smart Display Removal and Repositioning
1. Bring the Smart Display close to the transmitter until the screws can be inserted loosely into the holes in the electronics module. Without tightening the screws, press the Smart Display gently until it engages connector J1 on the electronics module and can be pushed no further.

2. Use a flat blade screwdriver to tighten the screws fully.

3. Replace the enclosure cap by turning clockwise. Tighten cap to compress the O-ring. Turn on power to the transmitter.

**Remove a Smart Display:**

1. Turn off power to the transmitter.

2. Remove the glass-faced enclosure cap by turning counterclockwise.

3. Using a flat blade screwdriver, loosen the two screws holding the Smart Display. Lift the Smart Display, loosening the screws further if necessary, until it can be separated from the electronics module.

4. Use the screws to secure the electronics module.

5. Place the Smart Display in an electrostatic protective container.

6. Replace the enclosure cap by turning clockwise. Tighten cap to compress the O-ring. Turn on power to transmitter.

### 4.6.2 Electrical Conduit and Cable Installation

All electrical conduit and all signal wires must be supplied by the user. Access to electrical terminals is described in Section 4.6.2.3.

For conduit and cable routing, refer to user’s installation drawings. Installation of conduit and cabling should follow the guidelines given below.

#### 4.6.2.1 Conduit

- Transmitter conduit inlets accept male conduit fittings. Refer to the transmitter’s nameplate and Section 9.1 to determine whether conduit threads are ½-14 NPT or M20 x 1.5.

  Seal ½ NPT fittings with TFE/PTFE tape; seal M20 fittings with a soft-setting sealing compound rated for at least 105°C (221°F).

- When routing conduit, avoid areas that might subject the conduit to chemical or physical abuse or areas with high electromagnetic interference/radio frequency interference (EMI/RFI) conditions.

- Install conduit for field wiring.

- If a high humidity environment can exist and the transmitter is located at a low point in the conduit run, install drain seals at the transmitter’s conduit inlets to prevent condensation from entering the transmitter. See Figure 4-16.

- Remove all sharp edges or burrs from conduit that may damage wires.

- 18 inches of flex conduit is recommended at each transmitter.
4.6.2.2 Cables

- Mark or tag each cable conductor as either LOOP (+) or LOOP (-) to ensure correct connection at the transmitter.
- Use pulling grips and cable lubricants for easier cable pulling. Pull cable through conduit into transmitter terminal compartment.
- Do not exceed the maximum permitted pulling tension on the cables. Maximum tension is normally specified as 40% of the cable’s breaking strength.
- Do not exceed the maximum conduit fill specified by the National Electric Code.

4.6.2.3 Access to Transmitter Terminal Compartment

1. Remove the enclosure cap closest to the electrical entrance by turning counterclockwise. A cap wrench is needed to remove an enclosure cap from a CENELEC approved transmitter.
2. Replace the enclosure cap by turning clockwise.
4.7 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

This section describes loop wiring for Point-to-Point and Multi-Drop networks. Refer also to Section 4.8 for installation in hazardous locations. Figure 4-17 shows typical conductor terminations.

WARNING

Electrical shock hazard. Remove electrical power from all involved equipment, wires, and terminals.

4.7.1 Loop Wiring

The following should already have been completed:

- Selection of either analog or digital operating mode and corresponding Point-to-Point or Multi-Drop network; Section 4.3.4.
- Selection of a power supply; Section 4.3.5.
- Mechanical installation of transmitter(s) installed; either Section 4.4 or Section 4.5.
- Pulling of loop cable through conduit and into terminal compartment; Section 4.6.2.

To connect the transmitter to the loop, perform the following steps.

1. Access the transmitter signal terminals by turning the enclosure cap nearest to the electrical entrance counterclockwise.
2. Determine method of connection to transmitter signal terminals; see Figure 4-17 for typical connection methods.
3. Strip loop cable and conductors. Install ring tongue or spring spade terminals for #6 screws and the cable conductor gauge. If terminals will not be used, tin conductor ends and form a loop.
4. Connect the loop cable to the LOOP (+) and (-) terminals inside the transmitter’s enclosure. Refer to Figures 4-6 through 4-9 for the needed connections for the type of network. Terminals will accommodate wire sizes up to 16 AWG.
5. Reinstall the enclosure cap. Tighten cap to compress the O-ring.
6. If one of the two electrical conduit entrances in the housing is not used, it should be plugged. Refer to the transmitter’s nameplate and Section 9 to determine whether entrance holes accept ½ NPT or M20 x 1.5 fittings.

Seal ½ NPT fitting with TFE/PTFE tape; seal M20 fitting with a soft setting sealing compound rated for at least 105ºC (221ºF).

7. Ground the enclosure by installing a 16 AWG (or larger) copper wire between the enclosure ground screw and a low resistance ground, such as a nearby metal cold water pipe.
4.7.2 Transient Suppressor Option

When installing a transmitter with the integral transient suppressor option, perform the following additional steps to ensure proper operation of the transient suppressor.

1. Install a 50-ohm quenching resistor in series with the loop when the transmitter is powered from a power supply rated at above 0.5 A.

2. Ground the transmitter enclosure using either the external or internal grounding screw to prevent damage or personal injury in the event of nearby lightning strikes. The recommended ground strap is 12 gauge stranded copper wire. Always ground transmitters according to the National Electrical Code (ANSI C1-1971).

3. Ensure that the polarity of both the positive and negative terminal board terminals is POSITIVE with respect to the transmitter enclosure.

4.8 HAZARDOUS AREA INSTALLATION

Drawings showing transmitter installation data for hazardous areas are located in Appendix B. Entity parameters, barrier selection, and important wiring information are specified on these drawings. The appendix also contains a list of tested barriers.

Before installing a transmitter in a hazardous area, check the nameplate and Sections 9.1 and 9.3 of this manual for required approvals or certifications.
Explosion-Proof Installation

If the installation is required to be explosion-proof as defined by the National Electrical Code, refer to a current copy of the Code and the following:

- User-supplied explosion-proof conduit seals (glands) are required on transmitter housing conduit outlets and any installed junction boxes. See Figure 4-16.
- Explosion-proof glands must provide a good seal. Apply a sealing compound around the sealing surface if necessary.
- Power wiring conduit entries at the transmitter must have a minimum of five threads fully engaged.
- The enclosure cap must be installed and have a minimum of eight threads fully engaged with no damaged threads permitted.
- Go to Section 4.7 for wiring connections to the transmitter’s terminals. Refer to Appendix B for hazardous area installation.

This completes the physical installation.
5.0 POST-INSTALLATION CHECKOUT

This section provides guidelines to verify that the proper transmitter is installed, correctly wired, and operational prior to placing the system in service. If the transmitter was not commissioned on the bench prior to installation, refer to Section 3 before proceeding.

5.1 EQUIPMENT REQUIRED

- User configuration data for transmitter(s) under test (see Appendix C)
- HART Communicator (see Section 2 of this manual)
- Laboratory grade digital multimeter (DMM); for calibrating the 4 to 20 mA output signal

Voltmeter Section
- Accuracy ±0.01% of reading
- Resolution 1.0 mV
- Input impedance 10 MΩ

Ammeter Section
- Accuracy ±0.1% of reading
- Resolution ±1 µA
- Shunt resistance 15Ω or less

5.2 INSTALLATION REVIEW

1. Note the model designation and certifications on the transmitter’s nameplate and compare to model specified in user’s documentation (P&I drawing).

2. Refer to Section 9 to confirm that the correct model with the correct certifications has been installed. Confirm that any needed hazardous area barriers have been installed and all other installation requirements have been met.

3. Check all wiring for correct and secure connection. Refer to Section 4 of this manual and user’s documentation for wiring diagrams.

4. Check wire runs to be sure wires are protected from abrasion or other damage, correctly supported, and isolated from other signal or power wiring.

5. Check that a current sense resistor of the correct value has been installed.

6. Apply power to the power supply or other loop power source (e.g., controller). Use the DMM to check power supply output voltage.
5.3 EQUIPMENT CONNECTION

1. Connect the HART Communicator across a network junction, the current sense resistor, range resistor, or the transmitter under test as shown in Figure 5-1. There is no connection polarity as the HART Communicator is a non-polar device.

2. Connect a DMM in series with either loop wire; see Figure 5-1. Set the DMM to read 4-20 mA.

Notes:

1. HART Communicator Connections:
   Non-hazardous location - Connect as shown above.
   Hazardous location - Refer to the Communicator nameplate and the Manual supplied with the Communicator for certifications and approvals before connecting.

2. Connect the DMM (set to mA) in series with either loop wire. Remove jumper to install DMM and replace when DMM is removed.

FIGURE 5-1 Equipment Connection for System Checkout

5.4 VERIFICATION

This section covers communication test, communication error check, analog output verification, and configuration verification.

5.4.1 Communication Test

This test verifies that the HART Communicator and transmitter(s) can communicate properly. From user configuration documentation, obtain transmitter IDs, addresses, and tags.
1. Turn on the HART Communicator.

   If the Communicator finds a transmitter on a Point-To-Point Network, the Online menu with the
transmitter’s type and tag name is displayed. Go to Section 5.4.2.

   If the Communicator displays: No device found at address 0. Poll?, go to either step
2 or 3.

2. POINT-TO-POINT NETWORK

   Check the following: Communicator connections, all other loop connections, power to transmitter,
transmitter address (0), transmitter model number. Repair as necessary and repeat step 1.

3. MULTI-DROP NETWORK

   Press Yes (F1) to enter digital mode and search for devices with polling addresses of 1-15.

   If the Communicator finds a transmitter on a Multi-Drop Network, the Online menu with the
transmitter’s type and tag name is displayed. Each transmitter connected to the loop can be interrogated
in sequence. Go to the next Section.

   If the Communicator displays: No device found. Press OK, check all loop connections,
power to transmitters, transmitter addresses (1-15), transmitter model numbers, etc. Repair as
necessary and repeat step 1.

5.4.2 Communications Error Check

1. Establish communication; the Online menu displays. Press the Quick Access Key to display the Quick
Access Key menu.

2. Press “2” on the keypad to display the Status menu. Press “2” again to start checking for errors. The
Communicator checks for errors.

3. If no error is present, the message “No Errors” displays. Go to step 4.

   If one or more errors is detected, one or more error codes is displayed. Go to step 4, then refer to
Section 7.3 Troubleshooting to confirm and resolve the error(s).

4. Press OK (F4). Turn off the Communicator or press the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key to
return to the menu for the next procedure.

5.4.3 Verify Analog Output Signal

This test verifies that a transmitter is operating properly and is capable of transmitting a 0% or 100%
analog output signal that can be received at its destination. The test applies only to transmitters operating in
analog mode.

1. Establish communication; the Online menu displays. Press
“1” or RIGHT ARROW/SELECT to select Loop Override.
2. A warning appears: “WARN–Loop should be removed from automatic control.” If the loop status cannot be changed for operational reasons, press ABORT (F3) to end this procedure and return to the Online menu. If it is okay to proceed, go to step 3.

3. Remove the loop from automatic control, then press OK (F4). When OK is pressed, a list of analog output options is displayed (at right).

4. Press “1” on the keypad or ENTER (F4) to select the 4 mA option. The Communicator displays the message “Fld dev output is fixed at 4.000 mA.” Press OK (F4) to confirm and proceed with testing or press ABORT (F3) and proceed to step 8.

5. Read the DMM. The value should be 4 mA.

6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 using the 20 mA output level. The DMM reading should be 20 mA.

7. For outputs other than 4 or 20 mA, choose option 3, Other, and enter any desired output value. The DMM reading should be the entered value in mA.

8. To end the loop override session, press “4” on the keypad or the ABORT (F3) softkey. The message “Returning fld dev to original output” appears.

9. When the message “NOTE–Loop may be returned to automatic control” appears, return the loop to automatic control, then press OK (F4). This completes verification of analog output.

**IMPORTANT**

Failure to exit loop override correctly can cause the transmitter to remain parked at a fixed current.

This completes the system checkout. Disconnect test equipment, connect any disconnected wires, and restore any removed protective covers on the transmitter or other devices.
6.0 ON-LINE CONFIGURATION AND OPERATION

On-line operation includes remote configuration and monitoring involving communication between the HART Communicator (host device) and Model 340 (field device). It also includes local configuration using the transmitter’s built-in magnetic switches.

Figures 3-1 and 5-1 show the connections for on-line configuration. Here, the HART Communicator and Model 340 are directly communicating, and data may be uploaded from the transmitter to the HART Communicator or downloaded from the HART Communicator to the transmitter. In addition, the Model 340 can be configured locally using built-in magnetic switches.

The first part of this section contains the steps to configure and monitor a Model 340 from a HART Communicator. The latter part of the section describes local operation of a transmitter using its magnetic switches.

6.1 REMOTE CONFIGURATION AND OPERATION

6.1.1 Configuration

Each transmitter is shipped with default data stored in its memory. Some of this data controls communication and transmitter operation and cannot be altered by the user. Other data is used to make the transmitter respond to changes in pressure with a change in current or digital output and is alterable by the user. This data includes configuration parameters that are used to set up the transmitter.

Begin configuration as described in the following pages. Note that a two-column format is used for the remainder of this section: HART Communicator screens are shown in the right-hand column, related procedure steps in the left-hand column.

1. Establish communication with a transmitter (see Section 3.2). The Online menu is displayed.

2. Press “3” on the Communicator keypad to display the Configure Xmtr menu (at right). This menu shows the list of function blocks and other transmitter features that can be configured.

The top line on the display shows the transmitter type and the transmitter tag number.

Write Protection

Write protecting a transmitter prevents other instruments on the loop from changing configuration parameters. To change the write protection of transmitter, follow the steps below.

1. From the Configure Xmtr menu, press “1” on the keypad to display the Write protect menu. This menu offers two options:
   - Disable – Permits transmitter parameters to be changed and a configuration to be downloaded to a transmitter by pressing SEND key.
   - Enable – Prevents changes to transmitter parameters and downloading of a configuration to a transmitter.
2. From the Write protect menu (at right), choose either Enable or Disable. Write protection is now either enabled or disabled for the transmitter to which the Communicator is connected.

3. When the Configure Xmtr menu appears again, turn off the Communicator before continuing with configuration.

**Function Blocks**

There are 12 function blocks in a Model 340 transmitter, including the Write Protect block discussed above. Each block contributes a specific operation and each operation is defined by one or more user-defined parameters. Configuration is the process of selecting the needed function blocks and entering or editing the parameters. Appendix A describes each function block with its parameters. Appendix C provides the default value for each parameter.

After parameters have been defined, the new configuration information for that block can be sent immediately to a transmitter, or the user can change the parameters of other function blocks, then send the configuration for all the function blocks at once.

**NOTE**

Configurations cannot be sent if write protect mode is enabled.

The next several sections describe configuration of individual function blocks. To configure a specific function block:

1. Choose the function block to be configured by pressing the DOWN arrow until the function block’s name is highlighted on the Configure Xmtr menu (e.g., Sensor Input at right).
2. Press RIGHT ARROW/SELECT to display the menu for the chosen function block.
3. Go to the section of this manual for the chosen function block (Sections 6.1.1.1-6.1.1.10).

**6.1.1.1 Sensor Input Block**

Sensor Input block parameters and the range of values are described in Appendix A. Default values are in Appendix C.

1. From the Sensor Input menu, press “1” on the keypad to display the Measured Var Unit menu. The current MV unit is shown directly beneath the menu name (right).

2. To change the MV unit, use the UP or DOWN arrow keys to highlight the desired unit. Units are listed in Appendix A under the Sensor Input Block description.

3. Press ENTER (F4) to select the highlighted unit and display the Sensor Input menu.
4. To view or change either MV Lo or MV High, scroll to the menu item, then press RIGHT ARROW/SELECT.

5. Use the keypad to enter the new value, then press ENTER (F4). Press ESC (F3) to display the Sensor Input menu without making a change.

6. To view or change the Damping value, scroll to highlight the menu item, then press RIGHT ARROW/SELECT, or press “4” on the keypad.

7. Enter a new value for Damping (in seconds), then press ENTER (F4). Press ESC (F3) to return to the Sensor Input menu without making a change.

8. To choose a transfer function, scroll to highlight the menu item, then press RIGHT ARROW/SELECT, or press “5” on the keypad to see the transfer function options (at right).

9. Scroll to the desired transfer function, then press ENTER (F4) to select this function or ABORT (F3) to abandon the procedure and return to the Sensor Input menu.

10. To view or change the transfer function cutoff value, scroll to highlight the Transfer Fct Cutoff item, then press RIGHT ARROW/SELECT, or press “6” on the keypad.

11. Type a new value for the transfer function cutoff, then press ENTER (F4), or press ESC (F3) to return to the Sensor Input menu without making a change.

12. To view or change the zero dropout value, scroll to highlight the menu item, then press RIGHT ARROW/SELECT, or press “7” on the keypad.

13. Type a new value for zero dropout, then press ENTER (F4), or press ESC (F3) to return to the Sensor Input menu without making a change.

14. To range the transmitter by applying actual URV and LRV pressures, scroll to highlight Active Input, then press RIGHT ARROW/SELECT, or press “8” on the keypad. The Active Input menu (at right) displays. The screen shows the actual pressure measurements.

15. Rerange by performing the following procedure:
   1) Apply the LRV pressure to the transmitter.
   2) Scroll to the Set Lo menu option or press “4” on the keypad. Press RIGHT ARROW/SELECT to enter the current measured value as the LRV.
   3) The display recycles and shows the new LRV.
   4) Apply the URV pressure to the transmitter.
5) Scroll to the Set Hi menu option or press “5” on the keypad. Press RIGHT ARROW/SELECT to enter the current measured value as the URV.

6) The screen recycles and shows the new URV.

7) Press the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key two times to return to the Sensor Input menu.

**NOTE**

To conserve battery power, do not leave the HART Communicator in the Sensor Input mode.

16. Go to the next section or the next desired function block.

### 6.1.1.2 Totalizer Block

Totalizer block parameters and the range of values are described in Appendix A. Default values are in Appendix C.

1. From the Totalizer Block menu, press “1” on the keypad to display the Fullscale value menu (at right).

2. Use the keypad to enter the desired fullscale value. Press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value and return to the Totalizer Block menu.

3. To change the timebase, press “2” on the keypad to view the Timebase menu.

4. Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to scroll to the appropriate timebase value. Press ENTER (F4) to select the new value or press ESC (F3) to return to the Totalizer Block menu without making a change.

5. From the Totalizer Block menu, press “3” to display the Multiplier menu.

6. Use the keypad to enter a new multiplier value. Press ENTER (F4) to select the new value or press ESC (F3) to return to the Totalizer Block menu without making a change.

7. From the Totalizer Block menu, press “4” to display the Units menu.

8. Use the keypad to enter a new unit value. Press ENTER (F4) to select the new unit or press ESC (F3) to return to the Totalizer Block menu without making a change.

9. From the Totalizer Block menu, press “5” to display the Zero Dropout menu.

10. Use the keypad to enter a new zero dropout. Press ENTER (F4) to select the new value or press ESC (F3) to return to the Totalizer Block menu without making a change.
11. From the Totalizer Block menu, press “6” to display the Local Display menu (at right). The current selection is shown underneath the menu name.

12. To enable or disable the transmitter’s Smart Display, scroll to the desired choice, then press ENTER (F4) to select the new choice or press ESC (F3) to return to the Totalizer Block menu without making a change.

13. Go to the next section or the next desired function block.

### 6.1.1.3 Characterizer

The Characterizer block allows the output signal to be adjusted to suit unique situations, such as an irregular tank shape or non-linear valve. Characterizer block parameters and the range of values are described in Appendix A. Default values are in Appendix C.

1. From the Characterizer menu (at right), press “1” on the keypad to display the Characterizer submenu.

2. Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to choose either characterizer ON or OFF, then press ENTER (F4) to select that choice or press ESC (F3) to return to the Characterizer menu without making a change.

3. To view or change the characterizer position, press “2” on the keypad to display the Characterizer Position menu.

4. Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to choose either Transmitter Output or Controller Output as the characterizer position, then press ENTER (F4) to select that choice or press ESC (F3) to return to the Characterizer menu without making a change.

5. To enter values to define the characterizer curve, scroll to any X or Y line on the Characterizer menu and press RIGHT ARROW/SELECT to display the X or Y menu.

6. Type the desired value for X or Y, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value or press ESC (F3) to return to the Characterizer menu without making a change. Continue until all necessary changes have been made to the characterizer curve.

7. Go to the next section or the next desired function block.

### 6.1.1.4 Operator Display Block

Operator Display block parameters and the range of values are described in Appendix A. Default values are in Appendix C.

1. From the Operator Display menu (at right), press “1” on the keypad to display the Process Var Unit menu.

2. Type the alphabetic or alphanumeric sequence for the process engineering variable unit, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm
the new unit or press ESC (F3) to return to the Operator Display menu without making a change.

3. To change the PV low value, press “2” on the keypad to display the Process Var Lo menu.

4. Type the desired low value for the process variable range, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value or press ESC (F3) to return to the Operator Display menu without making a change.

5. To change the PV high value, press “3” on the keypad to display the Process Var Hi menu.

6. Type the value for the desired high value for the process variable range, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value or press ESC (F3) to return to the Operator Display menu without making a change.

7. To turn the Auto Rerange feature on or off, press “4” on the keypad to view the AutoRerange menu.

8. Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to select either Off or On, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the selection or press ESC (F3) to return to the Operator Display menu without making a change.

9. To change the units to be displayed locally, or the combination of units to be displayed during autotoggling, press “5” on the keypad to display the list of local units (at right).

10. Use a keypad number to select a local display units option and return to the Operator Display menu. Alternatively, use the UP or DOWN arrows to scroll to the desired option, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm your selection or press ABORT (F3) to return to the Operator Display menu without making a change.

11. To turn the Autotoggle feature Off or On, press “6” on the keypad to view the Autotoggle menu.

12. Use keypad numbers 1 or 2 to select either Off or On and return to the Operator Display menu. Alternatively, use the UP or DOWN arrows to scroll to the desired option, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new selection or press ABORT (F3) to return to the Operator Display menu without making a change.

13. To enter a toggle time value in seconds, press “7” on the keypad to display the Toggle Time menu.

14. Type the desired toggle time value, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value or press ESC (F3) to return to the Operator Display menu without making a change.

15. Go to the next section or the next desired function block.
6.1.1.5 Transmitter ID

Transmitter ID block parameters and the range of values are described in Appendix A. Default values are in Appendix C.

1. From the Transmitter ID menu (at right), press “1” on the keypad to display the Tag menu.

2. Type the alphanumeric tag for the transmitter (up to 8 characters), then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new name or press ESC (F3) to return to the Transmitter ID menu without making a change.

3. To change the transmitter’s descriptor, press “2” on the keypad to display the Descriptor menu.

4. Type the alphanumeric descriptor (up to 16 characters), then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the descriptor or press ESC (F3) to return to the Transmitter ID menu without making a change.

5. To change the message text for the transmitter, press “3” on the keypad to display the Message menu.

6. Type the desired message text (up to 32 characters), then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the message or press ESC (F3) to return to the Transmitter ID menu without making a change.

7. To enter a date, press “4” on the keypad to display the Date menu (at right).

8. Type the date in DD/MM/YY format, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new name or press ESC (F3) to return to the Transmitter ID menu without making a change.

9. To enter the transmitter serial number, press “5” on the keypad to display the Device S/N menu.

10. Type the serial number (no letters permitted), then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new number or press ESC (F3) to return to the Transmitter ID menu without making a change.

11. To enter a polling address, press “6” on the keypad to display the Poll addr menu.

12. Type a polling address (0, or 1-15), then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new polling address or press ESC (F3) to return to the Transmitter ID menu without making a change.

13. Go to the next section or the next desired function block.

6.1.1.6 Output Block

The Output block is used to set the failsafe level at one of three positions:

- Lo – 3.85 mA
- Hi – 22.5 mA
• Last Output – The last output (in mA) before failure occurred.

1. From the Configure Xmtr menu, press “7” on the keypad to display the Output Block menu.

2. To change the failsafe value, press “1” or the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key to display the Failsafe Level menu (at right).

3. Use the UP or DOWN arrow keys to scroll to the desired failsafe level, then press ENTER (F4) to select the level or ESC (F3) to return to the Output Block menu without making a change.

4. Press the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key once to display the Configure Xmtr menu.

5. Go to the next section or the next desired function block.

6.1.1.7 Alarm Block

Alarm block parameters and the range of values are described in Appendix A. Default values are in Appendix C.

1. From the Alarm Block menu (at right), press “1” on the keypad to display the Alarm 1 menu.

2. Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to select Enable or Disable, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the selection or press ESC (F3) to return to the Alarm Block menu without making a change.

3. To change the Alarm 1 setpoint, press “2” on the keypad to display the Alarm 1 SP menu. This menu (at right) shows the measured variable units as well as the current setpoint value.

4. Type a setpoint value, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value or press ABORT (F3) to return to the Alarm Block menu without making a change.

5. To change the Alarm 1 type, press “3” on the keypad to display the A1 Type menu.

6. Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to choose either Low or High, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new type or press ESC (F3) to return to the Alarm Block menu without making a change.

NOTE

Configuration of the preceding functions is identical for Alarm 2.

7. To turn the self-clearing NAK (non-acknowledgment) on or off, press “7” on the keypad to display the Self Clearing NAK menu. On means that alarms for conditions that no longer
exist will be cleared automatically. Off means that all alarms must be acknowledged.

8. Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to choose either On or Off, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the selection or press ESC (F3) to return to the Alarm Block menu without making a change.

9. To choose whether to disable alarms when the transmitter is out of service, press “8” on the keypad to display the Out of Service menu.

10. Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to choose either Off or On, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the selection or press ESC (F3) to return to the Alarm Block menu without making a change.

11. Go to the next section or the next desired function block.

6.1.1.8 SP Track & Hold Block

SP Track & Hold block parameters and the range of values are described in Appendix A. Default values are in Appendix C.

1. From the SP Track & Hold menu (at right), press “1” on the keypad to display the Tracking SP menu.

2. Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to select No or Yes, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the selection or press ESC (F3) to return to the SP Track & Hold menu without making a change.

3. To change the power-up setpoint (PUSP), press “2” on the keypad to display the Power-Up Setpoint menu. The current unit is displayed on this menu.

4. Type the setpoint value, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the selection or press ABORT (F3) to return to the SP Track & Hold menu without making a change.

5. Go to the next section or the next desired function block.

6.1.1.9 A/M Transfer

A/M Transfer block parameters and the range of values are described in Appendix A. Default values are in Appendix C.

1. From the A/M Transfer menu (at right), press “1” on the keypad to display the Power Up Mode menu.

2. Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to select A or M, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the selection or press ESC (F3) to return to the A/M Transfer menu without making a change.

3. To change the Auto Only selection, press “2” on the keypad to display the Auto Only menu.
4. Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to select Yes (A/M change from Communicator only) or No (magnetic switches can be used to change mode), then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the selection or press ESC (F3) to return to the A/M Transfer menu without making a change.

5. To change the power-up valve percentage, press “3” on the keypad to display the Power-Up Valve menu.

6. Type a new amount for the power-up valve percentage, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value or press ESC (F3) to return to the A/M Transfer menu without making a change.

7. Go to the next section or the next desired function block.

6.1.1.10 Controller

Controller block parameters and the range of values are described in Appendix A. Default values are in Appendix C.

1. From the Controller menu (at right), press “1” on the keypad to display the Controller menu.

2. Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to select OFF or ON, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the selection or press ESC (F3) to return to the Controller menu without making a change.

3. To select the type of controller, press “2” on the keypad to display the Type menu. The current type is displayed below the menu name.

4. Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to select Undefined, PID, PD, or ID, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the selection or press ESC (F3) to return to the Controller menu without making a change.

5. To change the action of the controller, press “3” on the keypad to display the Action menu.

6. Use the UP or DOWN arrow key to select Direct or Reverse, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the selection or press ESC (F3) to return to the Controller menu without making a change.

7. To change the proportional gain, press “4” on the keypad to display the Proportional Gain menu.

8. Type the new value for proportional gain, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value or press ESC (F3) to return to the Controller menu without making a change.

9. To change the time integral, press “5” on the keypad to display the Time Integral menu (at right).

10. Type the new time integral value (minutes/repeat), then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value or press ESC (F3) to return to the Controller menu without making a change.
11. To change the time derivative, press “6” on the keypad to display the Time Derivative menu.

12. Type the new time derivative value (minutes), then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value or press ESC (F3) to return to the Controller menu without making a change.

13. To change the derivative gain, press “7” on the keypad to display the Derivative Gain menu.

14. Type the new value for derivative gain, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value or press ESC (F3) to return to the Controller menu without making a change.

15. To change the manual reset value, press “8” on the keypad to display the Manual Reset menu.

16. Type the new value for manual reset (percent), then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value or press ESC (F3) to return to the Controller menu without making a change.

This completes configuration of the function blocks.

6.1.2 SEND and SAVE a Configuration

When the Configure Xmtr menu is first displayed, it shows a SAVE (F2) softkey. As each function block menu is displayed, the SAVE softkey continues to be displayed.

As soon as a change is made to any parameter, the SAVE softkey changes to SEND. Pressing SEND downloads the configuration with the new values to the transmitter, and the softkey returns to SAVE.

During a configuration session, it is the user’s choice whether to press SEND each time a change is made or wait until all changes have been made. Attempting to turn off the Communicator without sending data causes an error message to be displayed (at right).

Press YES (F1) to send the changed configuration data to the transmitter. The new configuration replaces the previous configuration in the transmitter.

Press NO (F2) to turn off the Communicator without sending the changes (changes are lost).

If data is sent to the transmitter, the SAVE softkey displays. Pressing SAVE allows data to be saved in the Memory Module or the Data Pack. Each saved configuration is given a unique name that can be used to retrieve the configuration later to save effort when configuring additional transmitters (see Section 2.5.1.2).
6.1.3 Quick Access Key Functions

The next few paragraphs describe how to use the factory-supplied Quick Access Key options. User-selected options can be added to the Quick Access Key menu as described in Section 2.6.1. To access the Quick Access Key functions, press the Quick Access Key (1) to power-up the Communicator or (2) from any online menu when connected to a transmitter.

The five Quick Access Key options provided with Model 340 Transmitters are:

- XMTR Variables
- Status
- Totalizer Control
- PID Control
- Range Xmtr

6.1.3.1 XMTR Variables

Parameters observable (but not changeable) from the XMTR Variables menu are those being supplied “live” from the connected transmitter, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MENU ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>PARAMETER</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>% Range</td>
<td>Percent of range (0-100%).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>MV</td>
<td>Measured variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>PV</td>
<td>Process variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SP</td>
<td>Setpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>Valve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Current</td>
<td>Current in milliamperes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Tot</td>
<td>Totalizer count.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. From the XMTR Variables menu, press a key from “1” through “7” to observe the desired variable.

2. Press EXIT (F4) to return to the XMTR Variables menu. Press LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU to return to the Quick Access Key menu.
6.1.3.2 Status

The Status menu provides data about the connected transmitter, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MENU ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>PARAMETER</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Model Number</td>
<td>Model number and other identification data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Errors</td>
<td>Check for errors and report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Alarms</td>
<td>Check for alarms and report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Totalizer Status</td>
<td>Report on totalizer interrupts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. From the Status menu, press “1” to display the Model Number menu (at right).

2. If no data shows for a particular attribute, press the number of the attribute (e.g., “3” for Software rev) to view the attribute value, then press EXIT (F4) to return to the Model Number menu.

3. In the same manner, press “2” through “6” on the keypad to observe any attributes not showing on the display, then press EXIT (F4) to return to the Model Number menu.

4. Press LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU to display the Status menu.

5. To observe errors, press “2” on the keypad to initiate a check for errors. The Communicator checks for errors, then displays “No Errors” or appropriate error codes (see Section 7). Press OK to display the Status menu.

6. To view the alarms status, press “3” on the keypad to display the Alarms menu (at right). Depending on the Communicator configuration, data may be showing for each transmitter attribute.

7. Press the appropriate keypad number to observe the current status (1, 2, or 3) or observe or change the alarm setpoint (4 or 5).

8. After observing data for any variable, press the F3 (EXIT or ABORT) softkey to return to the Alarms menu.

9. If desired, type a new setpoint for Alarm 1 or Alarm 2, press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value or press ABORT (F3) to return to the Alarms menu without making a change.

10. Press the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key to display the Status menu.
11. Press “4” on the keypad to display the Totalizer Status menu (at right).

12. If no data are showing for a particular parameter, press its number on the keypad (e.g., “3” for Interrupt) to view the parameter’s value, then press EXIT (F4) to return to the Totalizer Status menu.

13. Press the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key twice to display the Quick Access Key menu.

6.1.3.3 Totalizer Control

The Totalizer Stopped/Running menu (at right) permits direct control of the Totalizer.

1. Press the number of the desired action or use the UP or DOWN arrows to scroll to the action and press ENTER (F4). The action occurs immediately and the Quick Access Key menu is displayed. To take no action, press ABORT (F3).

2. To take another action, or reverse an action taken in error, press “3” to display the Totalizer menu again.

3. Press the number of the desired action. The action occurs and the Quick Access Key menu is displayed.

6.1.3.4 PID Control

The PID Control menu permits easy access to controller functions, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MENU ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>PARAMETER</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Change setpoint</td>
<td>Enter a new setpoint value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Change valve</td>
<td>Enter a new value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Go Auto/Manual</td>
<td>Observe auto/manual status, change controller operation from auto to manual or vice versa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Tune</td>
<td>Change action of the controller and enter new values for proportional gain, time integral, time derivative, derivative gain, and manual reset.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. From the PID Control menu, press “1” to change the setpoint.

2. Type a new setpoint value. When finished, press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value or press ABORT (F3) to return to the PID Control menu without making a change.

3. To change the valve value, press “2” on the keypad.

4. Type a new value. When finished, press ENTER (F4) to confirm the new value or press ABORT (F3) to return to the PID Control menu without making a change.
5. To change the auto/manual status, press “3” on the keypad to display the Go Auto/Manual menu (at right).

6. Press “1” to observe the current mode (if not displayed on the menu) or “2” or “3” to change the mode. Mode changes take a few seconds, then the Go Auto/Manual menu is displayed again. Press the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key to return to the PID Control menu.

7. To tune the controller, press “4” on the keypad to display the Tune menu (at right).

8. The functions available on the Tune menu are the same as those described for the Controller function block. To make changes, choose the parameter to change by pressing its number on the menu, type the new amount in the field provided, then press SEND (F3).

9. When finished making changes, press the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key twice to return to the Quick Access Key menu.

### 6.1.3.5 Range Xmtr

The Range Xmtr menu (at right) permits measured variable and process variable units and Lo/Hi values to be changed. It also provides access to Auto Rerange and Transfer Function menus.

1. Press the number of the desired menu option or use the UP or DOWN arrows to scroll to the option, then press RIGHT ARROW/SELECT.

2. To make changes to measured variable (MV) values or select a transfer function, follow the procedures given for the Sensor Input function block, Section 6.1.1.1.

3. To make changes to process variable (PV) values or set Auto Rerange On or Off, follow the procedures given for the Operator Display function block, Section 6.1.1.4.

4. When finished, press SEND to download the changed data to the transmitter. If desired, press SAVE to store the new configuration in the Memory Module or Data Pack.

5. Press the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key to return to the Quick Access Key Menu.
6.2 LOCAL TRANSMITTER OPERATION

The Model 340 has three built-in magnetic switches for local operation. They are located on the electronics module and are actuated through the wall of the transmitter enclosure using the Moore Products Co. magnetic screwdriver supplied with each unit.

![Magnetic Screwdriver Diagram]

**IMPORTANT**

Use only the Moore magnetic screwdriver to actuate the magnetic switches. Other magnets can cause inconsistent behavior of one or more switches.

The three switch targets are labeled Z (zero), FS (fullscale), and D (damping). Although pushbuttons are not involved, use of these switches is often called “pushbutton mode.” Local functions that can be performed with the magnetic switches are described below.

6.2.1 Smart Display Functionality

The optional Smart Display can display the measured variable (MV), process variable (PV), valve (V), setpoint (SP) in PV or MV units, and the output of the totalizer (TOTAL). See Figure 1-6.

The PV and MV units appearing on the Smart Display are chosen during configuration of the Operator Display function block (see Section 6.1.1.4) from the following options:

- % range – show values as percent of full span (%)
- PV units – show values in the units chosen for the process variable (ENG)
- MV units – show values in the units chosen for the measured variable (none)
- %, MV, and PV – show values in all three types of units

The units displayed during transmitter operation depend on (1) the local units option chosen during configuration of the Operator Display block, (2) whether the Controller block is ON or OFF, and (3) whether the Totalizer display is ENABLED or DISABLED. Possibilities are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Local Display Code</th>
<th>Controller (from Controller block)</th>
<th>Totalizer Display (from Totalizer Block)</th>
<th>Variables Available on Local Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MV</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>MV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>MV, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>P in MV units, SP in MV units, V in %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>P in MV units, SP in MV units, V in %, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PV</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>PV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PV</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>PV, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PV</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>P in PV units, SP in PV units, V in %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Display Code</td>
<td>Controller (from Controller block)</td>
<td>Totalizer Display (from Totalizer Block)</td>
<td>Variables Available on Local Display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PV</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>P in PV units, SP in PV units, V in %, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>%, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>P in %, SP in %, V in %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>P in %, SP in %, V in %, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV/PV/%</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>MV, PV, %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV/PV/%</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>MV, PV, %, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV/PV/%</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>P in MV units, P in PV units, PV in %, SP in MV units, SP in PV units, SP in %, V in %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV/PV/%</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>P in MV units, P in PV units, PV in %, SP in MV units, SP in PV units, SP in %, V in %, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Only</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Only</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Only</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Only</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The valve is always displayed on the Smart Display as a percentage of controller output and the “V” and “%” annunciators are lit. The setpoint is displayed in the same units as the process variable, and the “SP” and “ENG,” or “%,” or (none) annunciators are lit.

If the applied pressure is outside the configured range, the display flashes.

### 6.2.2 Toggling the Display Manually

While conducting testing or for other reasons it may be necessary to change the functioning of the Smart Display. Simply touch the magnetic end of the magnetic screwdriver momentarily to one of the targets to perform the following:

- **Z** - Halts autotoggling of display if autotoggle is “on.” Touch this target again to resume autotoggling. If left alone, the transmitter will time out and resume autotoggling automatically after 5 minutes.

- **FS** - Manually toggle variables on the display if more than one variable has been configured for display (e.g., Local Display Code = %/MV/PV).

- **D** - No function
6.3 LOCAL TRANSMITTER CONFIGURATION (CONTROLLER OFF)

The local configuration changes described below apply to transmitters with the controller turned off. Local functions for a transmitter-controller are described in Section 6.4.

6.3.1 Set Local Zero

The Z switch is used to set the lower range value (LRV) of the transmitter to equal the applied pressure. The procedure below assumes that the transmitter is field mounted to an operating process.

1. Adjust the process pressure to the zero value.
2. Hold the magnetic end of the screwdriver on the Z switch for 5 seconds or more, then remove the screwdriver from the target. The “PB” annunciator on the optional Smart Display should remain lit after removing the screwdriver; if it does not, repeat this step. If working without a Smart Display, be sure to count seconds properly or hold the screwdriver for 7 or 8 seconds to be sure pushbutton mode is activated.

**NOTE**

Pushbutton mode times-out after 1 minute of inactivity. If the PB annunciator goes out, repeat step 2 before proceeding.

Pushbutton mode can be deactivated by (1) momentarily holding the magnetic screwdriver on the D switch or (2) waiting 1 minute for the automatic time-out to occur.

3. Set the zero value by momentarily pressing the magnetic end of the screwdriver on the Z switch. The “PB” annunciator on the Smart Display extinguishes, indicating a return to normal mode.

The currently applied pressure has now been stored as the LRV (0% range value).

**NOTE**

When a new 0% value is set, the transmitter’s 100% value is automatically shifted to maintain the original span, except as follows:

- If the process is out of range of the transmitter, then no new zero value is stored.
- If the new zero value would shift the fullscale value past the sensor limit, the new fullscale value is automatically set to the appropriate sensor limit (except when this would produce a span that is too small, in which case neither zero nor fullscale values are stored).

4. The zero set is complete. To set a new fullscale, go to the next section.

6.3.2 Set Local Fullscale

The FS switch is used to set the upper range value (URV) of the transmitter to equal the applied pressure. The procedure below assumes that the transmitter is field mounted to an operating process. Changing the fullscale value does not change the zero value.

1. Adjust the process pressure to the fullscale value.
2. Hold the magnetic end of the screwdriver on the FS switch for 5 seconds or more, then release the pushbutton. The “PB” annunciator on the Smart Display should remain lit after removing the
screwdriver; if it does not, repeat this step. If working without a Smart Display, be sure to count
seconds properly or hold the screwdriver for 7 or 8 seconds to be sure pushbutton mode is activated.

NOTE

Pushbutton mode times-out after 1 minute of inactivity. If the PB annunciator goes
out, repeat step 2 before proceeding.

Pushbutton mode can be deactivated by (1) momentarily holding the magnetic screwdriver on the D
switch or (2) waiting 1 minute for the automatic time-out to occur.

3. Enter the fullscale value by momentarily pressing the magnetic end of the screwdriver on the FS
switch. Observe that the “PB” annunciator on the Smart Display extinguishes, indicating a return to
normal mode.

The currently applied pressure has now been stored as the URV (100% range value).

NOTE

Changing the fullscale value of the transmitter does not affect the zero value. If the
input value is either smaller than the minimum span or larger than the maximum
span allowed by the transmitter, then no new fullscale value is stored.

4. The fullscale set is complete. To adjust damping, go to the next section.

6.3.3 Adjust Local Damping

Adjusting the damping changes the value of the digital filter’s time constant. The D, Z, and FS switches are
used to select one of 10 damping values. The HART Communicator can be used to confirm the damping
settings.

1. Hold the magnetic end of the screwdriver on the D switch for 5 seconds or more, then release the
pushbutton. The “PB” annunciator on the Smart Display should remain lit after removing the
screwdriver; if it does not, repeat this step. If working without a Smart Display, be sure to count
seconds properly or hold the screwdriver for 7 or 8 seconds to be sure pushbutton mode is activated.

NOTE

Pushbutton mode times-out after 1 minute of inactivity. If the PB annunciator goes
out, repeat step 1 before proceeding.

Pushbutton mode can be deactivated by (1) momentarily holding the magnetic screwdriver on the D
switch or (2) waiting 1 minute for the automatic time-out to occur.

2. Set the damping value to 0 seconds by momentarily touching the Z switch with the magnetic end of the
screwdriver at least 10 times. This establishes a known starting point: 0 seconds. When a Smart
Display is present, it alternately displays “0.00” and “SEC” at this point.
3. Change to a new damping value by momentarily touching the FS switch “N” times to step to the value nearest the desired damping value (DV, in seconds) as shown below. If the desired damping value is exceeded, lower the damping value by momentarily touching the magnetic screwdriver to the Z switch for each step.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DV</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

While setting damping, the Smart Display shows alternately “SEC” for seconds and the new damping value in seconds. Observe that the value is correct.

4. When the desired damping value has been set, momentarily touch the D switch with the magnetic end of the screwdriver. This stores the damping value in the transmitter and returns the transmitter to normal mode.

6.4 LOCAL TRANSMITTER-CONTROLLER CONFIGURATION (CONTROLLER ON)

When the controller is on, magnetic switches accessible through the enclosure can be used to perform the following functions:

- Transfer control from auto (A) to manual (M) mode or vice versa
- Change setpoint
- Store setpoint as power-up setpoint (PUSP)
- Change valve
- Store valve as power-up valve (PUV)

The procedures below are performed using a Moore Products Co. magnetic screwdriver and the three switch targets Z (zero), FS (fullscale), and D (damping) located on the upper side of the transmitter enclosure (see Section 6.2).

6.4.1 Local A/M, Setpoint, and Valve Adjustments

These procedures assume that the transmitter is field mounted to an operating process and contains an optional Smart Display to show the Auto and Manual control mode and process variable, set point, and valve values.

**Change A/M Control Mode**

The active control mode is shown on the Smart Display by a lit “A” (Auto) or “M” (Manual) annunciator.

1. Hold the magnetic screwdriver on the D target for at least 5 seconds. The “PB” annunciator will light and remain lit as long as the switch is activated.

2. When the control mode annunciator changes from “A” to “M” or “M” to “A,” remove the screwdriver to release the switch. The control mode is now changed.
Change and Store Setpoint

The controller must be in the Auto control mode to change the setpoint. If it is not, change the mode using the preceding procedure.

1. Hold the magnetic screwdriver on the Z switch for at least 5 seconds. When the “SP” and “PB” annunciators are both lit, remove the screwdriver from the switch. The displayed number is the active setpoint value.

   NOTE

   If no action is taken within 1 minute, the display reverts to the process value. If that occurs, repeat step 1 before proceeding.

2. To change the setpoint value to a new value:
   • Touch the magnetic screwdriver repeatedly to the FS switch to increase the setpoint value in 0.01% increments of span or touch the magnetic screwdriver repeatedly to the Z switch to decrease the setpoint in 0.01% increments of span.
   • Alternatively, hold the magnetic screwdriver over either switch for more than 1 second. Setpoint value increases or decreases rapidly as long as the switch is held.

   NOTE

   The new setpoint is not yet stored as the power up setpoint (PUSP) in the transmitter. If the pushbutton mode is allowed to time out before storage is accomplished (“PB” annunciator goes out), the controller operates with the new setpoint, but will revert to the PUSP in the event of power-down.

3. To store the new setpoint in the transmitter as the PUSP, touch the magnetic screwdriver momentarily to the D switch. The controller stores the setpoint value and returns to normal mode. This completes the setpoint storage procedure.

Change and Store Valve Signal

The controller must be in Manual control mode to change the valve signal. If it is not, change the mode using the “Change A/M Control Mode” procedure before proceeding.

1. Hold the magnetic screwdriver on the FS switch for at least 5 seconds. When the “V,” “%,” and “PB” annunciators are lit, remove the screwdriver from the switch. The displayed number is the current valve signal in percent.

   NOTE

   If no action is taken within 1 minute, the display reverts to the process value. Repeat step 1 before proceeding.

   Interpreting a valve open/close position depends upon knowing if the final control element is configured as reverse or direct acting. For direct acting, 0% indicates a fully closed valve and 100% indicates a fully opened valve. The opposite is true for reverse acting.
2. To change the valve to a new value between -10% and 110%:
   - Touch the magnetic screwdriver repeatedly to the FS switch to increase the percentage in 0.01% increments or touch the magnetic screwdriver repeatedly to the Z switch to decrease the valve signal in 0.01% increments.
   - Alternatively, hold the magnetic screwdriver over either switch for more than 1 second. Valve signal increases or decreases rapidly as long as the switch is held.

   **NOTE**

   The new valve signal is not yet stored permanently in the transmitter. If the pushbutton mode times-out before storage is accomplished (“PV” annunciator appears and process value is displayed), the controller operates with the new valve signal, but will revert to the original valve signal in the event of power-down or Master Reset.

   To store the new valve signal in the transmitter, touch the magnetic screwdriver momentarily to the D switch. The controller stores the valve signal and returns to normal mode. This completes the valve signal storage procedure.

6.5 DISABLING THE MAGNETIC SWITCHES

The magnetic switches described above may be disabled using a jumper located on the optional Smart Display board (see Figure 4-15).

To disable the magnetic switches, move the jumper to the DIS position.

If a Smart Display is not installed, then the magnetic switches cannot be disabled.
7.0 CALIBRATION AND MAINTENANCE

This section describes calibration, preventive maintenance, and troubleshooting. The Calibration section contains procedures to calibrate a Model 340 and to eliminate any position-induced zero shift. The Maintenance section has preventive maintenance procedures that are employed to protect the reliability of the transmitter. Should a malfunction occur, procedures in the Troubleshooting section can help minimize downtime. This section also includes transmitter removal and replacement procedures, recommended spare and replacement parts, software compatibility, and return shipment instructions.

**WARNING**

In Division 1 areas, where an explosion-proof rating is required, remove power from the transmitter before removing the transmitter’s enclosure cap for access to the electrical terminal compartment.

7.1 CALIBRATION

A transmitter is calibrated at the factory and should not require field calibration, except to eliminate any position-induced zero shift. Sections 7.1.2 and 7.1.3 describe field calibration, which is performed using a Model 275 HART Communicator.

Transmitter calibration should be checked annually and the procedures in this section performed if the transmitter is found to be out of tolerance.

7.1.1 Equipment Required

Prior to performing calibration, obtain the following:

- HART Communicator, which has built-in calibration programs
- Laboratory grade digital multimeter (DMM) for calibrating the 4 to 20 mA output signal
  - Voltmeter Section
    - Accuracy ±0.01% of reading
    - Resolution 1.0 mV
    - Input impedance 10 MΩ
  - Ammeter Section
    - Accuracy ±0.1% of reading
    - Resolution ±1 µA
    - Shunt resistance 15Ω or less
- 24 Vdc power supply; for bench calibration
- Resistor 250Ω ±1%, carbon, ¼ watt; for bench calibration

Depending on whether bench or field calibration is to be done, make connections as shown in either Figure 7-1 or Figure 7-2.
Note:
Loop current can also be displayed on optional Smart Display in 0-100%.

FIGURE 7-1 Bench Test Connections

Notes:
1. Remove jumper between Circuit Junction terminals 1 and 2 and connect DMM as shown. Reconnect jumper after disconnecting DMM.
2. Loop current can also be shown on transmitter’s optional Smart Display in 0-100%.

FIGURE 7-2 Field Test Connections
7.1.2 Zero Trim

Model 340 transmitters are calibrated at the factory in a vertical position (nameplate up). If a transmitter is installed (or will be installed) in another orientation, it may need recalibration to eliminate position-induced zero shift, depending upon transmitter type and direction of rotation. Maximum zero shift is 1.2 inches H₂O (299 Pa).

Each time a transmitter is rotated from the orientation in which it was zeroed, there is the possibility of zero shift and the need for re-zeroing. Zero shift can be predicted, as follows:

- There is no zero shift with transmitter rotation as long as diaphragm orientation with respect to the earth does not change.

For example, in the drawing below, rotating the transmitter 90° either clockwise or counterclockwise from the nameplate-on-top reference orientation will not cause a zero shift because diaphragm orientation with respect to earth has not changed.

- Maximum zero shift occurs when rotating the transmitter causes diaphragm orientation with respect to the earth to be changed 90°.

For example, in the drawing below, rotating the transmitter 90° either clockwise (terminal board end down) or counterclockwise (display end down) from the nameplate-on-top orientation will cause maximum zero shift because the diaphragm orientation changed from vertical to horizontal.
7.1.2.1 Removing Zero Shift

Zero shift is easily removed by performing the following procedure. Prepare by performing the following steps:

1. Mount the transmitter in its final mounting position (orientation).

IMPORTANT

A bench re-zeroing can be performed provided the transmitter is exactly positioned (oriented) as it will be when installed in the field. However, field re-zeroing is more accurate.

2. Pipe the transmitter and adjust applied pressures.
   - Model 340D Differential Pressure Transmitter - For best performance, NO pressures, other than atmospheric, should be applied to the transmitter’s process HIGH and LOW input pressure ports unless used in a process that has a constant measurable static pressure. In this case perform this procedure at the operating static pressure.
     
     For field mounted differential pressure transmitters with piping connected to the LOW pressure port, the manipulation of piping valves and/or drains may be needed to ensure the appropriate requirement is met.
   - Model 340A Absolute Pressure Transmitter - To zero the transmitter, a full vacuum must be pulled on the transmitter. A zero off-set will occur with less than a full vacuum.

3. Connect the HART Communicator to the transmitter and apply power.

4. From the Online menu, press “2” on the keypad to access the Calibrate/Test menu. From the Calibrate/Test menu, press “2” to access the Calibrate menu (at right).
   
   If the transmitter zero is being calibrated at the bench, be sure the transmitter is positioned exactly as it will be when installed.

5. Press “1” on the keypad or press the RIGHT ARROW/SELECT key to access the Zero trim menu.

6. The Communicator displays the message “WARN–Loop should be removed from automatic control.” If it is permissible to do this, do so, and press OK (F4). If not, press ABORT (F3) to terminate this procedure.

7. If OK was pressed, the Communicator displays the message “WARN–This will affect sensor calibration.” Press OK (F4) to continue or press ABORT (F3) to terminate this procedure without calibrating the sensor zero.

If OK was pressed, the Communicator displays “Apply 0 input to sensor.” Make sure 0 input is being applied to the transmitter, then press OK (F4).
8. The Communicator automatically re-zeros the sensor while displaying the message “Sensor input stabilizing.” It then displays “Sensor zero succeeded” followed by “NOTE—Loop may now be returned to automatic control.” This signifies that the zero has been adjusted correctly.

To terminate the procedure, do not change the input and press ABORT (F3).

9. Return the loop to automatic control if necessary, then press OK (F4) to return to the Calibrate menu. This completes the zero trim procedure.

### 7.1.3 On-Line Zero Adjust

In some processes, the zero reference can change, for example, due to uneven changes of product density in the impulse piping. On-line zero adjustment changes the zero reference by a percentage of span while process pressure is applied to the transmitter.

The on-line zero adjust also is very useful for zeroing absolute transmitters when a good vacuum pump is not available.

1. Establish communication between the Communicator and transmitter. Refer to Section 3.2 as necessary.

2. From the Online menu, press “2” to display the Calibrate/Test menu. Press “2” to display the Calibrate menu.

3. Press “3” to begin the On-Line Zero process. The Communicator displays the message “Enter adjustment amount” (at right).

4. Enter the desired zero adjustment as a percent of span, then press ENTER (F4) to confirm the entry.

5. The Communicator displays the message “Is PV sufficiently adjusted?” Press “1” for YES to complete on-line zero adjustment, or press “2” for NO.

6. Pressing NO returns the display to that shown in step 3. Enter a new value for the zero adjust and repeat step 5.

### 7.1.4 Calibrate Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC)

Calibration of the DAC is not normally required and should be performed only after all other options have been exhausted. Bench calibration is recommended; perform steps 1 through 15.

1. Disconnect the transmitter from the process by performing the steps in Section 7.6.

**NOTE**

Removing a transmitter can interrupt power to other transmitters powered from a common power source. Note the effect this can have on process control and operation and, if necessary, follow the proper procedures to shut down the process.

When disconnecting the LOOP leads, carefully insulate each lead as it is removed to prevent accidental shorts.
2. Remove the enclosure cap to access the terminal compartment.

3. Connect the HART Communicator and DMM to the loop as shown in either Figure 7-1 or 7-2. Set the DMM to measure 4-20 mA.

4. Establish communication between the Communicator and transmitter. Refer to Section 3.2 as necessary.
   Be sure the polling address is set to 0. Refer to Section 6.1.1.5 as necessary.

5. From the Online menu, press “2” to display the Calibrate/Test menu. Press “2” to display the Calibrate menu.

6. Press “2” to begin the Calibrate DAC process. The Communicator displays the message “WARN–Loop should be removed from automatic control.” If it is permissible to do this, do so, and press OK (F4). If not, press ABORT (F3) to terminate this procedure.

7. If OK was pressed, the Communicator displays the reminder message “Connect reference meter.” If necessary, press ABORT (F3) to terminate the procedure and make the meter connection. Return to step 3 and start over.

8. If OK was pressed, the Communicator displays “Setting fld dev output to 4 mA.” Press OK (F4) to continue or press ABORT (F3) to terminate the procedure.

9. Observe the DMM reading, type the reading on the screen displayed (at right), and press ENTER (F4) to confirm the value. Press ABORT (F3) to terminate the procedure without calibrating the DAC.

10. The Communicator displays a confirmation message “Fld dev output 4.000 mA equal to reference meter?” If this is true, press “1” to indicate YES. If it is false, press “2” to indicate NO.

If the answer NO is selected, the display goes back to the one shown in step 9. Enter the correct value and proceed.

11. After completing the 4.000 mA calibration, the Communicator displays the message “Setting fld dev output to 20 mA.” Press OK (F4) to continue or press ABORT (F3) to terminate the procedure.

12. Observe the DMM reading, type the reading on the screen displayed (at right), and press ENTER (F4) to confirm the value. Press ABORT (F3) to terminate the procedure without calibrating the DAC.

13. The Communicator displays a confirmation message “Fld dev output 20.000 mA equal to reference meter?” If this is true, press “1” to indicate YES. If it is false, press “2” to indicate NO.

If the answer NO is selected, the display goes back to the one shown in step 12. Enter the correct value and proceed.

14. After completing the 20.000 mA calibration, the Communicator displays the message “Returning fld dev to
original output” followed by the “Loop may be returned to automatic control.” Press OK (F4) to continue and terminate the procedure.

15. Disconnect the test equipment, reconnect the jumper on the circuit junction terminals (Figure 7-2), and if necessary return the polling address to the appropriate value.

This completes calibration of the transmitter.

7.2 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

Preventive maintenance consists of periodic inspection of the transmitter, cleaning the external surface of the transmitter’s enclosure, draining condensate from conduit, and blowing-down or purging impulse piping to keep it free of sediment. Preventive maintenance should be performed at regularly scheduled intervals.

7.2.1 Tool and Equipment Requirements

The following tools and equipment are required for servicing:

- Set of Phillips and flat-blade screwdrivers.
- Set of open-end or box-end wrenches.
- Torque wrench (30 ft-lbs), 11/16" socket; used for connection block bolts.
- Digital multimeter (DMM); see Section 7.1.1 for specifications.

7.2.2 Transmitter Exterior Inspection

The frequency of the inspection will depend on the severity of the transmitter’s environment.

1. Inspect the exterior of the transmitter enclosure for accumulated oil, dust, dirt, and especially any corrosive process over-spray.

2. Check that both enclosure caps are fully threaded onto the enclosure, compressing the O-ring between the cap and the enclosure. The O-ring must not be cracked, broken, or otherwise damaged.

3. If an optional Smart Display is installed, inspect the protective viewing glass for cleanliness and damage. Replace a cracked or punctured glass; see Section 7.4 and the Parts List at the back of this Manual.

4. Inspect both enclosure electrical conduit entrances for possible moisture leaks. An unused conduit entrance must be plugged and sealed. Inspect the cable clamps of all watertight cable conduits for loose clamps and deteriorated sealing material. Tighten clamps and reseal as necessary.

5. If a conduit drain is installed, inspect the drain seals for obstructions.

6. If subjected to vibration, inspect all transmitter and mounting bracket hardware for tightness. Tighten loose hardware as necessary. Consider steps to reduce vibration.

7. Inspect process connection blocks for evidence of leakage, both at the impulse pipe connections and at the block interface to the transmitter end caps. If necessary, add sealant to pipe threads, tighten block bolts, and replace block TFE/PTFE seals.
7.2.3 Transmitter Exterior Cleaning

After an exterior inspection of the transmitter, the enclosure can be cleaned with the transmitter operating.

1. Clean the enclosure (except enclosure cap glass) and process manifold with a mild, nonabrasive liquid detergent, and a soft bristle brush, sponge, or cloth. Rinse the weatherproof enclosure with a gentle spraying of water.

   If the transmitter is subjected to heavy process over-spray, keep the enclosure free of excessive accumulation of process residue. Hot water or air may be used to flush away process residue if the temperature of the cleaning medium does not exceed the operating temperatures of the transmitter as listed in Section 9.3.4 Environmental.

2. Clean enclosure cap glass with a mild, nonabrasive liquid cleaner and a soft, lint-free cloth.

7.2.4 Transmitter Enclosure Interior Inspection

   WARNING

   Do not open the transmitter enclosure in an area where there may be risk of explosion or where process or environmental substances can contaminate the transmitter interior.

Remove the two enclosure caps periodically to inspect the interior of the transmitter enclosure. No accumulation of dust, dirt, or water (condensate) should be present inside the enclosure. If condensate is present, install a conduit drain (see Figure 4-16).

Check that all wire connections are tight.

Enclosure threads must be coated with a wet, paste-type, anti-seize compound such as Never-Seez by Emhart Bostik. Inspect the enclosure O-ring for damage.

7.2.5 Transmitter Calibration

An annual calibration check should be performed to ensure that the transmitter is within specifications. Refer to Section 7.1 for details.

7.2.6 Impulse Piping

To ensure accuracy and continued satisfactory performance, impulse piping must be kept clean and inspected for damage. Sediment or other foreign particles must not clog or collect in piping or the pressure chamber of the process manifold’s process connection blocks. A build up of residue can cause faulty measurement.

1. Inspect impulse piping for loose, bent, or cracked piping. Replace damaged piping.

2. At regular intervals, blow down the piping without passing line fluids containing suspended solids through the process manifold’s process connection blocks.

   The time interval between blowdowns is determined by the user’s previous experience with such systems or determined by evaluating system performance only after the transmitter has been in operation for a period of time.
7.3  TROUBLESHOOTING

This Section provides guidance and procedures to assist in identifying and correcting a malfunctioning transmitter. Section 7.2.1 lists needed tools and equipment. It is recommended that all documentation associated with the transmitter, including piping and loop wiring diagrams and configuration documentation, be obtained and made available to maintenance personnel to facilitate troubleshooting.

The most common symptom of a malfunctioning transmitter is incorrect, erratic, or no output. A malfunction can affect the transmitter’s analog output (4-20 mA) or its digital (HART) output. Furthermore, a malfunction can be the result of external forces and not a transmitter fault at all. Section 7.3.1 discusses troubleshooting techniques for the analog output. Section 7.3.2 discusses troubleshooting techniques for the digital output. Section 7.3.3. describes verifying a true transmitter failure should Section 7.3.1 or 7.3.2 not yield desirable results.

7.3.1  Analog Output

An analog output problem can appear as one of the following:

- No output or very low output. – There is no transmitter output or the output remains low despite changes in the process.
- High output. – Transmitter output remains high despite changes in the process.
- Erratic output. – Transmitter output varies when process does not.
- Sluggish Response – Transmitter seems to respond to process changes very slowly.

Often an analog output problem is caused by incorrect transmitter configuration or by something external to the transmitter. The following list shows possible causes and corrective actions for these problems. If reviewing this list and performing applicable corrective actions does not remedy the problem, proceed to Section 7.3.3 Diagnosing a Defective Transmitter.

Check Impulse Piping

- Check that high and low pressure pipe connections are not reversed.
- Check for leaks or blockage.
- Check for entrapped gas in liquid lines or for liquid in dry lines.
- Check for sediment in transmitter’s process connection blocks.
- Check that blocking valves are fully open and that bypass valves are tightly closed.
- Check that the density of the fluid in piping is unchanged.

Check Loop Power Supply/Wiring

- Check loop power supply for blown fuse or tripped circuit breaker.
- Check for 10 Vdc minimum across loop +/- terminals in transmitter terminal compartment.
- Check power supply output voltage: 15 Vdc minimum; 42 Vdc maximum.
- Check polarity of loop wiring at both power supply and transmitter.
- Check for loose or broken loop wiring at power supply terminals, supply barriers (if used), junction boxes, and transmitter terminal compartment.
- Check for disconnected or broken current sense resistor.
- Check for short between shield and loop + wire.
- Check for accumulation of moisture in transmitter terminal compartment.
- Check loop cable for proper type and length.
- Check for electrical interference between the loop cable and any adjacent cables in a cable tray or conduit.
Check Transmitter Configuration
- Check for proper operating mode: analog, address 0; digital, address 1-15.
- Check controller status: on or off.
- Check characterizer status: on or off.
- Check for appropriate transfer function.
- Check zero dropout value.

Check for a Transmitter Stuck in Override Mode
- Re-enter Loop Override from HART Communicator Online menu and properly exit Loop Override Mode.

Check for Variable Process Fluid Flow
- Install mechanical dampers in process pressure piping.
- Select a higher damping value (software filter time constant).

Check Primary Element
- Check that primary element is correctly installed.
- Check element for damage and leaks.
- Note any changes in process fluid properties that can affect output.

7.3.2 Digital Output (Communication)
A malfunctioning digital output can indicate a defective communication circuit. More commonly, however, these problems are caused by an incorrect or poor installation. It is possible to install a transmitter such that the 4-20 mA signal is correct, yet the digital HART signal is not.

The most common symptom of a communication problem is the inability to locate a transmitter on the loop using a HART Master Device, such as the HART Communicator. Typical messages from the HART Communicator include: device disconnected, no device found, or communication error.

If communication problems occur, check the following. Refer to the specifications in Section 9 as necessary.
- Check that loop resistance is >250Ω, <1100Ω.
- Check that electrical noise on loop is not excessive: power supply ripple should not exceed 12 mVp-p.
- Check that there are no high inductance devices in the loop (I/P for example). Install a HART communication filter across such a device.
- Check that the power supply voltage is high enough for the installed total loop resistance. Refer to Section 4.
- Refer to Section 4 and confirm that loop cable length is not excessive.
- Check that the HART Master is connected across a load.

7.3.3 Diagnosing a Defective Transmitter
Should the above not remedy the problem, the sensor assembly or electronics module may have failed. If the failure permits HART communication, use the HART Communicator to access the transmitter. Microprocessor based self-diagnostic tests continuously examine the sensor assembly and electronics module.

Perform the procedure below to access the diagnostic displays and determine if a fault exists.
1. If not already in communication with the suspect transmitter, establish communication (see Section 3.2).

2. Press the Quick Access Key and then press “2” to view the Status Menu. If “FAILSAFE” is displayed the transmitter has entered the failsafe mode.

3. From the Status menu, press “2” to obtain a list of errors. Note which of the error messages in the table below is displayed (multiple errors can be displayed).

4. Confirm that the fault still exists. Press the Quick Access Key again to return to the Online menu. Activate the self-test function by choosing “2” Calibrate/Test, then press “1” to perform a self-test. The transmitter will display a warning message, then perform the test.
   - If the fault was temporary – possibly as a result of excessive electrical noise or a power line spike – the Communicator will display “Transmitter PASSED transmitter selftest.” If the transmitter passes the selftest, it automatically exits the failsafe mode and resumes normal operation. No further action is required.
   - If the fault remains, the Communicator displays the message “Transmitter FAILED transmitter selftest.” Repeat the test for additional confirmation. If the transmitter fails again, consult the table below and perform the appropriate corrective action.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CODE</th>
<th>PROBABLE CAUSE</th>
<th>CORRECTIVE ACTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E2 ROM</td>
<td>ROM CHECKSUM match failed.</td>
<td>Replace electronics module.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E3 RAM</td>
<td>Microprocessor failed, RAM inoperative.</td>
<td>Replace electronics module.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E4 EPROM</td>
<td>Microprocessor cannot retain configuration or calibration data</td>
<td>Reconfigure/recalibrate transmitter. Perform transmitter self-test (step 4). If self-test fails, replace transmitter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E5 TIMER</td>
<td>A major cycle interrupted itself.</td>
<td>Replace electronics module.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If a Smart Display is installed on the transmitter it will display the word “FAIL” if any one of these error codes is detected.

7.3.3.1 Additional Troubleshooting for Electronics Module Failure

Establish communications between the HART Communicator and transmitter, then check transmitter status.

If transmitter status checks OK, exit the Status menu to the Online menu and select Loop Override. Verify the loop by setting the output current to 4, 12, and then 20 mA (read current on Smart Display or ammeter connected to the loop).

If selected loop currents are significantly out of tolerance, or loop current cannot be set, replace the electronics module (see Section 7.4.1). If the transmitter passes the loop override test, continue troubleshooting.

All Model 340 electronic modules are interchangeable. Try substituting an electronics module from a known good transmitter or from spare parts stock. This may require reconfiguration of the transmitter.
7.3.3.2 Additional Troubleshooting for a Sensor Assembly

The sensor assembly cannot be independently field tested because special pressure generating/measuring equipment, instrumentation, and software are required to confirm operational integrity. The procedures below, consisting of a combination of transmitter self-diagnostics and a known particular symptom, and electronics module substitution, can be used to confirm a sensor assembly problem.

First, if “Transmitter FAILED transmitter selftest” is displayed by the HART Communicator, perform the following:

1. Check for obvious physical damage to the sensor assembly or evidence of a loss of fill fluid.
2. Use the Quick Access Key to reach the Status\Errors Menu. If the sensor assembly EEPROM has failed, the message “E6 SENSOR” will display.
3. Transmitter self-diagnostics may not report a failure of the sensor assembly or enhanced mode oscillator (EMO). To identify this type of failure:
   - From the Errors display, press the LEFT ARROW/PREVIOUS MENU key, followed by “1” on the Communicator keypad to display the MV (item 2 on the menu) and Current (item 6 on the menu). If the EMO or sensor has failed, the values of the MV and I are as follows:
     - MV is equal to -156.7% of the sensor assembly’s upper range limit as listed in Section 9.3 Specifications.
     - I 3.84 mA (if URV > LRV) or 21.6 mA (if URV < LRV)

Example

This example illustrates the MV displayed in the event of failure of transmitter with a Range D sensor assembly (URL +450 inH\textsubscript{2}O). For a sensor input block configured for one of the following MV units, the corresponding -156.7% value is listed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MV UNITS</th>
<th>URL</th>
<th>MV at Failure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PSI</td>
<td>16.25 PSI</td>
<td>-25.4 PSI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inHg</td>
<td>33.7 inHg</td>
<td>-52.8 inHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmHg</td>
<td>842.4 mmHg</td>
<td>-1320.0 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inH\textsubscript{2}O</td>
<td>450 inH\textsubscript{2}O</td>
<td>-705 inH\textsubscript{2}O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If defective, the entire sensor assembly must be replaced (see Section 7.4.2).

4. If steps 1 and 2 do not confirm a sensor assembly defect, replace the electronics module with an on-hand spare (see Section 7.4.1). If the problem still exists and all other loop elements and wiring have been thoroughly tested, return the transmitter for repair.

7.4 ASSEMBLY REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT

The Smart Display, sensor assembly, electronics module, and terminal board are not user-serviceable. To replace the Smart Display, follow the procedure given in Section 4.6.1.

This section describes removal and replacement of the electronics module, sensor assembly, and terminal board. These procedures can be accomplished easily with standard hand tools (see Section 7.2.1 for a list of tools).
### 7.4.1 Replacing the Electronics Module

Replacing the electronics module requires reaching inside the enclosure. Since the sensor assembly cable is short, and space is tight, use care when engaging the keyed connectors.

1. If present, remove the Smart Display as described in Section 4.6.1.
2. Gently pull the electronics module forward (i.e. out of the enclosure) until the sensor assembly cable can be grasped with thumb and forefinger. While holding the cable, pull the electronics module until it disengages from the sensor cable. Refer to Figure 4-15 as necessary.
3. Set the electronics module aside in an electrostatic protective container. Remove the new electronics module from its container.
4. Carefully align the keyed connector on the sensor assembly sensor cable with the jack on the back of the new electronics module. Press the connector into the jack until it is seated fully.
5. Align the tubular extensions on the electronics module cup with the two RFI feed-through pins inside the enclosure. Press in and gently rock the electronics module until it can be pressed in no farther.
6. Install the Smart Display and enclosure cap. Power and configure the transmitter. Use the optional Smart Display or the HART Communicator (Section 5) to ensure that the electronics module is functioning correctly.

### 7.4.2 Sensor Assembly Removal and Replacement

The sensor assembly is not field repairable. It must be replaced if defective. The transmitter must be removed to a workbench to accomplish removal and replacement.

**Removal**

1. If the transmitter is controlling a process, use the proper procedures to shut down the process. Turn off power to the transmitter.
2. Close all appropriate impulse piping valves to isolate the process from the sensor assembly.
3. Disconnect the impulse piping from the sensor’s high and low pressure end caps and separate the pipes from the caps. Drain process fluid from the sensor.
4. Unscrew the rear enclosure cap protecting the terminal board compartment.
5. Tag and disconnect the wires at the terminal board.
6. Disconnect the conduit from the transmitter enclosure and pull the wires free of the enclosure. Replace the rear enclosure cap.
7. Disconnect the transmitter from its mounting bracket and remove it to a workbench.
8. Clamp the end cap portion of the sensor assembly in a bench vise with the transmitter in an upright position. Use wood blocks to protect the end caps from being damaged by the vise.
9. Remove the enclosure cap for access to the electronics module. If an optional Smart Display is installed, remove it as described in Section 4.6.1. Store the Smart Display in a static protective bag.
10. Pull the electronics module just clear of the enclosure and, while holding the sensor assembly sensor cable P1 connector firmly in one hand and the electronics module in the other, pull the two apart.
11. From inside the enclosure compartment, remove the enclosure positioning limit screw (10-32 Allen head) and lockwasher from the sensor assembly’s tube. Retain screw and lockwasher.
12. Loosen the enclosure rotation set screw on the enclosure stem and gently pull the enclosure away from the tube of the sensor assembly. An O-ring on the sensor assembly’s tube will offer some resistance to pulling. To overcome this resistance, gently rotate the enclosure left and right while pulling. Set the enclosure aside.

13. Clean any process fluid or other contamination from the sensor assembly, including the flange if a 340F model, and repack the entire assembly for return or disposal.

**NOTE**

Normally, the sensor assembly is not disassembled, but is replaced in its entirety. A flanged sensor assembly is never field disassembled. If the sensor assembly is disassembled for any reason, replace the TFE/PTFE seals (P/N 15965-54) between the capsule and end caps, lubricating them on one side only with Dow Corning No. 4 compound to hold them in place. Install the end caps. Insert the four bolts and tighten in an “X” pattern – lower right, upper left, lower left, upper right. Torque to 30 ft-lbs, then replace the sensor assembly as described below.

**Replacement**

1. Unpack the replacement sensor assembly.

2. Refer to the Parts List exploded view drawing. Reposition the sensor assembly in the bench vise with the sensor’s tube pointing up. Use wood blocks to protect the end caps from damage.

3. Carefully fit the sensor cable through the enclosure neck. Slowly slide the enclosure down on the sensor assembly while rotating the enclosure left and right to overcome the resistance to the tube’s O-ring.

4. When the cable end appears in the enclosure, pull it toward the enclosure opening while continuing to slide the enclosure over the sensor assembly. When a stop inside the enclosure is hit, positioning is correct.

5. Retrieve and install the enclosure positioning limit screw previously removed, a 10-32 Allen head screw and lockwasher.

6. Retrieve the electronics module and connect the sensor cable P1 connector to it.

7. Align the electronics module carefully on the RFI feed-throughs and press it in place.

8. If applicable, install the previously removed Smart Display (see Section 4.6.1).

9. Orient the enclosure and tighten the previously loosened set screw on the enclosure neck.

10. Replace the enclosure cap and tighten until O-ring seats.

11. If desired, perform mounting shift zero shift calibration (see Section 7.1) before field installation of the transmitter.

12. Reinstall transmitter at field site by performing, in reverse, **Removal** steps 1 to 7. If not already done, perform a zero shift calibration (see Section 7.1). Refer to Section 4 for installation connections.

13. Turn on system power and open valves to restore transmitter to service. Check all connections for leaks.

**CAUTION**

Do not exceed the Maximum Overrange ratings when placing the transmitter into service. Properly operate all shut-off and equalizing valves. Ratings are listed in Section 9.
14. Check transmitter configuration as described in Section 3.4.

7.4.3 Terminal Board Assembly Removal and Replacement

This procedure concerns replacing the terminal board assembly. Optionally, a terminal board assembly may contain a transient suppressor. Be sure to install the correct type of terminal board assembly.

Removal

The terminal board assembly usually can be replaced at the installation site; if not, remove the transmitter for bench servicing.

1. If the transmitter (controller version) is controlling a process, use the proper procedures to shut down the process.
2. Turn off the transmitter and remove the enclosure cap to access the terminal board.
3. Retrieve the wrist strap from the maintenance kit and snap it on wrist. Connect the ground clip to the transmitter or mounting bracket.
4. Using a medium-size flat-blade screwdriver or a T-10 Torx® wrench, remove the terminal board mounting screw (just above the Moore Products Co. logo).
5. Lift the terminal board straight out of the compartment.
6. Discard the defective board.

Replacement

1. Retrieve the wrist strap from the maintenance kit and snap it on wrist. Connect the ground clip to the transmitter or mounting bracket.
2. Remove the replacement terminal board assembly from its packaging, carefully align it with the enclosure casting and the two feed-throughs, and press firmly until it seats inside the enclosure.
3. Insert and tighten the terminal board mounting screw.
4. Replace the enclosure cap and tighten. If necessary, reinstall the transmitter in the field.
5. Restore power to the transmitter. Calibration is not required.

7.5 NON-FIELD-REPLACEABLE ITEMS

Certain components are not replaceable except at the factory. These are:

- Enclosure cap display viewing glass: Agency regulations do not permit field replacement of a broken or damaged glass as this would invalidate the enclosure’s explosion proof rating. Replace the entire damaged enclosure end cap assembly.
- RFI feed-throughs Potted

7.6 TRANSMITTER REPLACEMENT

To replace a transmitter, refer to the procedure below and one or more of the following Sections in the Installation section of this Manual:

- 4.4 Mechanical Installation, Models 340D, A, and G
- 4.5 Mechanical Installation, Model 340F
• 4.6 Mechanical Installation, All Models
• 4.7 Electrical Installation
• 4.8 Hazardous Area Installations

**WARNING**

Before loosening process connections, be certain that process material will not cause injury to personnel. Depressurize transmitter and drain process material as necessary.

**Removal**

1. Remove power from transmitter. Close shut-off valves and open by-pass valves.
2. Remove the enclosure cap for access to the terminal board and disconnect the conduit and loop wiring. Refer to Section 4.7 Electrical Installation. Replace the enclosure cap.
3. Disconnect the transmitter from the process. Refer to the Mechanical Installation section for the transmitter at hand; see above list.

**WARNING**

Be certain that disconnecting transmitter from process will not release process material.

1) Model 340D, A, and G – Disconnect all process piping (e.g., impulse piping or 3-valve manifold). Then remove transmitter from mounting bracket.
2) Model 340F – Remove the transmitter from mating flange.

**Replacement**

1. Fasten transmitter to mounting bracket. Refer to Mechanical Installation section for transmitter at hand.
2. Connect transmitter to process.
3. Connect conduit and loop wiring. Refer to Sections 4.6.2 Electrical Conduit and Cable Installation and 4.7 Electrical Installation.
4. Apply power to transmitter and configure. Refer to Section 6 On-Line Configuration and Operation.
5. Check all connections, then open shut-off valves and close by-pass valves.

**7.7 MAINTENANCE RECORDS**

An accurate record keeping system for tracking maintenance operations should be established and kept up to date. Data extracted from the record may serve as a base for ordering maintenance supplies, including spare parts. The record may also be useful as a troubleshooting tool. In addition, maintenance records may be required to provide documentary information in association with a service contract. It is suggested that, as appropriate, the following information be recorded:

1. Date of service incident
2. Name or initials of service person
3. Brief description of incident symptoms and repairs performed
4. Replacement part or assembly number
5. Software compatibility code of original part
6. Software code of replacement part
7. Serial number of original part
8. Serial number of replacement part
9. Issue number of original circuit module
10. Issue number of replacement circuit module
11. Date of completion

7.8 RECOMMENDED SPARE AND REPLACEMENT PARTS

The quantity and variety of spare parts is determined by how much time a transmitter can be permitted to
remain out of service or off line.

Replaceable parts are shown in the Parts List at the back of this manual. Consult the Parts List to select
spare parts to stock and to obtain spare and replacement part numbers. Contact the factory if assistance is
needed in determining quantity and variety of spare parts.

When ordering a part, provide the following information for the item, module or assembly to be replaced or
spared. This information will help ensure that a repair addresses the observed problem, and that a
compatible part is supplied.

1. Part number from Parts List or from a label on the assembly
2. The single-digit software revision level
3. Model and serial number from the transmitter’s nameplate
4. User purchase order number of original order, available from user records
5. New user purchase order number for the assembly to be replaced or spared
6. Reason for return for repair; include system failure symptoms, station failure symptoms, and error
codes displayed.

Returns should be packaged in original shipping materials if possible. Otherwise, package item for safe
shipment or contact factory for shipping recommendations. Refer to Section 7.10 to obtain a Return
Material Authorization (RMA) number.

IMPORTANT

The electronics module and Smart Display must be placed in static shielding bags to
protect them from electrostatic discharge.

7.9 SOFTWARE COMPATIBILITY

Transmitter software controls the transmitter’s operating routines and its HART communications with
loop-connected stations and gateways. When requesting technical information or during troubleshooting, it
often is necessary to know the transmitter’s software revision level. A single digit identifies the transmitter
software revision level.

To view the software revision level:

1. Establish communication with the transmitter (see Section 3.2).
2. From the Online menu, press the Quick Access Key.
3. From the Quick Access Key menu, press “2” to access the Status menu, then press “1,” to access the
   Model Number menu.
4. The third item on the Model Number menu is the software revision number. If this number is not
displayed, press “3” to display the Software rev screen, then press EXIT (F4).
5. Turn off the Communicator or press the Quick Access Key to return to the Online menu.

7.10 RETURN SHIPMENT

The return of equipment or parts for any reason must always be coordinated with the manufacturer. Should it become necessary to make a return shipment, be sure to contact Moore Products Co. first and obtain packaging information and carrier recommendations.

Equipment Return Within North America

To Return Equipment

- Call the Repair Service Group at (215) 646-7400, ext. 4RMA (4762) weekdays between 8:00 a.m. and 4:45 p.m. Eastern Time to obtain an RMA number. Mark the RMA number prominently on the outside of the shipment.
- When calling for an RMA number, provide the reason for the return. If returning equipment for repair, failure information (e.g., error code, failure symptom, installation environment) will be requested. A purchase order number will be requested.

Material Safety Data Sheet

- A Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) must be included with each item being returned that was stored or used anywhere hazardous materials were present.

Packaging

- Package assembly in original shipping materials. Otherwise, package it for safe shipment or contact the factory for shipping recommendations. A module must be placed inside a static shielding bag to protect it from electrostatic discharge.

Equipment Return Outside of North America

Contact the nearest Moore Products subsidiary. Provide the reason for the return. A purchase order number will be requested. Request equipment packaging and shipping instructions.
8.0 CIRCUIT DESCRIPTION

This section provides a basic circuit description of a Model 340 Pressure Transmitter-Controller. Figure 8-1 shows the functional block diagram, which consists of the sensor module and the electronics module.

The Model 340 Transmitter family consists of four model types: Differential Pressure (340D), Absolute Pressure (340A), Gauge Pressure (340G), and Flange-Mounted Liquid Level (340F). All models use the same interchangeable electronics module.

All Model 340 Transmitters can communicate with a HART Communicator or a Primary Master controller using the HART protocol.

8.1 SENSOR ASSEMBLY

The sensor assembly is part of the sensor assembly, which includes the process diaphragms and process end caps. The sensor assembly includes an electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM) chip, a custom application-specific integrated circuit (ASIC), and a capacitive pressure sensor element.

During the characterization process at the factory, all sensor assemblies are subjected to a controlled series of temperature and pressure cycles. Data recorded from the series is used to generate characterization factors, which are stored in the sensor assembly’s EEPROM. The appropriate sensor range limits (Range 1, 2, 3, or 4) also are stored in the EEPROM. Because the characterization data is stored in EEPROM, no calibration is required when replacing a sensor assembly.

The capacitive sensor element contains two silicon-based capacitors: a sense capacitor ($C_s$) whose value changes in response to an applied process pressure, and a reference capacitor ($C_r$) whose value is independent of pressure. Layers of glass and silicon are combined to form the capacitive sensor element. These layers are anodically bonded to form a seal that is stronger than the glass itself and provides a monolithic structure that is extremely stable and has no measurable hysteresis.

The custom ASIC, which is mounted on the header of the capacitive sensor element, contains oscillator, amplifier, and buffer circuitry. The capacitive sensor element is part of the ASIC’s oscillator and forms an enhanced multimode oscillator (EMO), which generates three frequencies based on the capacitive measurements of $C_s$, $C_r$, and $C_s+C_r$. These frequencies are amplified and buffered by the ASIC and presented as CMOS-compatible square wave outputs for processing by the electronics module.

8.2 ELECTRONICS MODULE

The electronics module, located in the transmitter’s enclosure, consists of one surface mount electronics board attached to a plastic cup, which holds the board within the enclosure. A separate terminal board, located on the opposite side of the enclosure dividing wall, contains surge and noise filter circuitry and may include an optional transient suppressor board.

The electronics module consists of:

- Standard Bell 202 modem that uses the frequency shift keying (FSK) technique to communicate via the HART protocol
FIGURE 8-1 Block Diagram, Electronics Module and Sensor Assembly
• Microcontroller that:
  – Controls communications
  – Corrects and linearizes the input pressure signal
  – Stores configuration data in nonvolatile EEPROM, where it is retained when power is interrupted, permitting the transmitter to become functional upon power-up
  – Performs local operation and control functions entered by way of zero, fullscale, and damping magnetic switches or from a HART Communicator
  – Performs proportional-integral-derivative (PID) control functions (transmitter-controller only)
• Custom ASIC that provides:
  – A clock to the Microcontroller
  – Frequency-to-digital conversion of the pressure signal from the sensor assembly
  – Serial digital-to-analog (D/A) conversion of the sensor assembly’s signal to drive the voltage-to-current (V/I) converter
  – Multiplexing of display information to the optional Smart Display
• 3.5 Vdc power supply with current limiting that provides DC operating power to the sensor assembly and electronics module
• Power supply voltage monitor that generates a Microcontroller reset signal when the network (loop) supply voltage is interrupted
• Bandpass filter that passes HART signals and rejects low-frequency analog signaling
• Voltage-to-current (V/I) converter that converts the output of the ASIC’s D/A conversion to a 4-20 mA loop output signal

8.3 THEORY OF OPERATION

The following description applies to all Model 340 transmitters since they operate similarly.

8.3.1 Pressure to Frequency Conversion

The process variable applied to the capacitive pressure sensor changes the value of the sensor’s $C_s$ capacitor, thereby generating a sense frequency ($F_s$) by the EMO that is directly proportional to the applied pressure. The EMO uses the reference capacitor ($C_r$) and the sum of both capacitors ($C_{s+r}$) to generate additional frequencies $F_r$ and $F_{s+r}$. One at a time, each of the three frequencies is gated to the EMO ASIC by digital commands from the electronics module.

8.3.2 Frequency to Digital Conversion

The first of the three frequencies ($F_r$, $F_{s+r}$, and $F_s$) generated by the EMO is applied to the ASIC. Two counters in the ASIC count the time and number of cycles for each frequency. This data is stored and a Mode Toggle (MT) command is sent to the EMO to switch to the next frequency. When all three frequencies are stored, the Microcontroller shifts the data into its serial port.

The Microcontroller uses a specially developed algorithm that cancels the effects of parasitic capacitance and calculates the true ratio $C_r/C_s$. When the ratio is equal to one (1), the pressure difference between the two capacitors is known to be zero. A ratio less than one corresponds to a positive pressure difference and a ratio greater than one to a negative pressure difference. The ratio is linearized and temperature corrected to produce an accurate pressure signal, which is sent back to the ASIC for D/A conversion.
8.3.3 D/A Conversion and Current Signal Transmission

The pressure signal received by the ASIC is applied to a 16-bit D/A Converter and Multiplexer. The Multiplexer sends serial clock and display information to the optional Smart Display board, where it is decoded and displayed on the Smart Display as pressure in engineering units.

The D/A Converter translates the digitized pressure signal into a pulse width-modulated signal with a pulse width directly proportional to the magnitude of the process pressure. The pulses are filtered and applied to an operational amplifier, which drives a V/I converter, whose output is a Darlington transistor pair acting as a pass transistor that outputs a standard 4-20 mA current signal to the network (output loop).

8.3.4 Communication Format

The Model 340 communicates, via the HART protocol, with the HART Communicator and any Primary Master controller connected to the network.

HART communication uses phase-continuous frequency-shift-keying (FSK) at 1200 bits/sec and frequencies of 1200 Hz (logic 1) and 2200 Hz (logic 0). HART communication is superimposed (AC coupled) on the analog 4-20 mA signal. Because the digital signaling is high frequency AC, its DC average is zero and does not interfere with analog signaling.

A 2-pole active filter connected to the loop input receives HART transmissions. The filter effectively rejects low frequency analog signaling and other out-of-band interference, preventing a compromise of the digital reception. The filtered signal is applied to a Zero Crossing Detector, which converts the filtered information into clean pulses of uniform amplitude before introduction to the Bell 202 modem.

The modem receives and processes (e.g., demodulates) the serial FSK signal (R_xa) and outputs the signal (R_xd) to the Microcontroller where serial to parallel conversion is performed.

In response to the received signal, the Microcontroller outputs a signal (T_xd) to the modem where it is modulated and fed into the feedback circuit of the V/I Converter for transmission (T_xa) over the loop.

8.4 TRANSIENT SUPPRESSOR OPTION

The integral transient suppressor operates using a spark gap and zener diode to protect both the positive and negative signal terminals from transient spikes.

The spark gap is capable of conducting large amounts of current, but its response time is long compared to the rise time of most transients. The faster zener diode begins conducting during the rapidly rising portion of the transient, with the current flow through the zener diode limited by the inductor.

Once the spark gap begins to conduct, the current flow through the zener diode is reduced and the large transient current flows from the signal terminal, through the spark gap, to the transmitter enclosure. The spark gap continues to conduct until the current falls below 0.5 amperes.
9.0 MODEL DESIGNATIONS AND SPECIFICATIONS

This section contains the model designation tables, a comprehensive accessory list, functional and performance specifications, and hazardous area classifications for Model 340 Pressure Transmitters.

IMPORTANT

Before installing, calibrating, troubleshooting or servicing a transmitter review this section carefully for applicable specifications and hazardous area classifications.

9.1 MODEL DESIGNATIONS

Tables 9-1 through 9-6 identify each model designation entry on a transmitter’s nameplate. The nameplate also carries other important transmitter information in addition to the model designation:

- Bill of material number (B/M)
- Serial number
- Span limits
- Maximum working pressure (MAX. WPR)
- Factory calibration (FCTY CAL)
- Certifications
- User-supplied TAG

IMPORTANT

Confirm transmitter model by referring to the transmitter’s model designation on its nameplate and in Tables 9-1 through 9-6 before installing, applying or removing power, configuring or servicing.

NOTES FOR TABLES 9-1 THROUGH 9-6
(1) Standard for all ranges
(2) Stock model selection
(3) NACE MR0175-96 compliance requires this option
(4) Describe the modification or provide a quotation reference number
(5) Required selection for OUTPUT option “D”, direct connection to Model 348 Field Mounted Controller
(6) Not available with FM/CSA approvals
(7) Standard on Input Ranges A and B
(8) Standard on Input Ranges D and F
(9) Must specify Body Parts Code “RR”
(10) Must select Body Parts “AA”
(11) Not available with Input Range A
(12) Not available with Input Range A or B
(13) Available with Body Parts “TD” or “TE” only
(14) CENELEC EExd units are available only with OUTPUT code “B”
(15) 2” flanges with an extension will fit into Schedule 40 and larger I.D. pipes
     3” and 4” flanges with an extension will fit into Schedule 80 and larger I.D. pipes
(16) B8M (316 SS) bolting has a reduced pressure rating - consult Moore Products Co.
### TABLE 9-1 Model 340D, Model Designation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic Model Number</th>
<th>340D</th>
<th>Differential Pressure Transmitter-Controller</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Input Range: Span Limits, Min/Max</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>0.2/5 inH&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;O (0.05/1.25 kPa)</td>
<td>(10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>0.75/15 inH&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;O (0.185/3.7 kPa)</td>
<td>(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>10/450 inH&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;O (2.5/112.5 kPa)</td>
<td>(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>12.6 psi/450 psi (87/3100 kPa)</td>
<td>(2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Output**
- B 4-20 mA<sub>dc</sub> with HART protocol<sup>(1)(2)</sup>
- C 4-20 mA<sub>dc</sub> with HART protocol and integral Transient Suppressor
- D Direct Connection to Model 348 Field Mounted Controller or Spare Capsule

**Process Diaphragm**
- H Hastelloy C-276<sup>(2)(8)(11)</sup>
- S 316L SS<sup>(2)(7)</sup>
- A Hastelloy C-276 with 2 Remote Seals<sup>(9)(11)</sup>
- B Hastelloy C-276 with 1 Remote Seal on high side<sup>(9)(12)</sup>
- C Hastelloy C-276 with 1 Remote Seal on low side<sup>(9)(12)</sup>

**Body Parts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wetted</th>
<th>Vent/Drain</th>
<th>Process Connection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AA</td>
<td>316 SS End</td>
<td>½ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)(13)(14)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AB</td>
<td>316 SS Side (top)</td>
<td>½ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC</td>
<td>316 SS Side (bottom)</td>
<td>½ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AD</td>
<td>316 SS Side (dual)</td>
<td>½ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE</td>
<td>316 SS End</td>
<td>¼ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td>316 SS Side (top)</td>
<td>¼ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AG</td>
<td>316 SS Side (bottom)</td>
<td>¼ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AH</td>
<td>316 SS Side (dual)</td>
<td>¼ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA</td>
<td>316 SS End</td>
<td>½ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BB</td>
<td>316 SS Side (top)</td>
<td>½ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC</td>
<td>316 SS Side (bottom)</td>
<td>½ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BD</td>
<td>316 SS Side (dual)</td>
<td>½ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BE</td>
<td>316 SS End</td>
<td>¼ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BF</td>
<td>316 SS Side (top)</td>
<td>¼ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BG</td>
<td>316 SS Side (bottom)</td>
<td>¼ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BH</td>
<td>316 SS Side (dual)</td>
<td>¼ NPT&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR</td>
<td>Remote Seals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Wetted Vent/Drain**
- Process Connection
  - Wetted
  - Vent/Drain
  - Proc. Conn.

**Fill Fluid**
- B Silicone DC200<sup>(1)(2)</sup>
- C Inert<sup>(11)</sup>
- D Paratherm<sup>(11)</sup>

**Output Indicator**
- 5 4-½ Digit Digital Smart Display<sup>(7)(2)</sup>
- N Not Required<sup>(5)</sup>

**Standard Options**
- D B7M Bolts<sup>(3)</sup>
- E B8M Bolts<sup>(16)</sup>
- X Oxygen Cleaned
- Y Special Features<sup>(4)</sup>
- N Not Required<sup>(2)(5)</sup>

**Mounting Bracket**
- 1 2" Pipe Mount Bracket with SS Hardware<sup>(2)</sup>
- 2 Universal Bracket
- 3 2" Pipe Mount 316SS Bracket
- N Not Required<sup>(3)</sup>

**Housing**
- 1 Aluminum ½ - 14 NPT<sup>(1)(2)</sup>
- 2 Aluminum M20 x 1.5<sup>(6)</sup>
- N Not Required<sup>(11)</sup>

**Hazardous Area Classification**
- 2 CSA All/CRN Registration
- 3 FM/CSA All<sup>(3)(12)</sup>
- M CENELEC EEExd<sup>(14)</sup>
- R SAA All and ABS Type Approved
- L CENELEC EEExia and BASEEFA Type N
- N Non-Approved
- W FM/CSA All and ABS Type Approved

---

**Sample Model Number**

9-2 May 1998
## TABLE 9-2 Model 340A, Model Designation

### Basic Model Number

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>340A</td>
<td>Absolute Pressure Transmitter-Controller</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Input Range: Span Limits, Min/Max

- **D**: 10/450 inH₂O abs (2.5/112.5 kPa abs)
- **F**: 12.6/450 psia (87/3100 kPa abs)

### Output

- **B**: 4-20 mAdc with HART protocol\(^{(1)}\)
- **C**: 4-20 mAdc with HART protocol and integral Transient Suppressor
- **D**: Direct Connection to Model 348 Field Mounted Controller or Spare Capsule

### Process Diaphragm

- **H**: Hastelloy C-276\(^{(1)}\)
- **S**: 316L SS
- **B**: Hastelloy C-276 with 1 Remote Seal (specify AA for Body Parts)

### Body Parts

#### Wetted Process Connection

- **AA**: 316 SS \(\frac{1}{2}\) NPT\(^{(3)}\)
- **BA**: Hastelloy C-276 \(\frac{1}{2}\) NPT

#### Fill Fluid

- **B**: Silicone DC200\(^{(1)}\)
- **C**: Inert
- **D**: Paratherm

### Output Indicator

- **5**: 4-½ Digit Digital Smart Display™
- **N**: Not Required\(^{(5)}\)

### Standard Options

- **X**: Oxygen Cleaned
- **Y**: Special Features\(^{(4)}\)
- **N**: Not Required\(^{(5)}\)

### Mounting Bracket

- **1**: 2” Pipe Mount Bracket with SS Hardware
- **2**: Universal Bracket
- **3**: 2” Pipe Mount 316SS Bracket
- **N**: Not Required\(^{(5)}\)

### Housing

- **1**: Aluminum \(\frac{1}{2}\) - 14 NPT\(^{(1)}\)
- **2**: Aluminum M20 x 1.5\(^{(6)}\)
- **N**: Not Required\(^{(5)}\)

### Hazardous Area Classification

- **2**: CSA All/CRN Registration
- **3**: FM/CSA All\(^{(1)}\)
- **M**: CENELEC EExd\(^{(14)}\)
- **R**: SAA All and ABS Type Approved
- **L**: CENELEC EEExia and BASEEFA Type N
- **N**: Non-Approved\(^{(5)}\)
- **W**: FM/CSA All and ABS Type Approved

---

**Sample Model Number**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>340A</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>AA</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

---

\(^{(1)}\) See page 9-1 for these notes.

\(^{(2)}\) \(^{(3)}\) \(^{(4)}\) \(^{(5)}\) \(^{(6)}\) Not Required

\(^{(12)}\) \(^{(13)}\) \(^{(14)}\) Not Required
### TABLE 9-3  Model 340G, Model Designation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic Model Number</th>
<th>Gauge Pressure Transmitter-Controller</th>
<th>Note: Superscript (#) - See page 9-1 for these notes.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>340G</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Input Range: Span Limits, Min/Max
- **D**: 10/450 inH₂O (2.5/112.5 kPa)\(^{(2)}\)
- **F**: 12.6/450 psig (87/3100 kPa)\(^{(2)}\)
- **G**: 300/5500 psig (2008/37920 kPa)\(^{(2)}\)

#### Output
- **B**: 4-20 mA dc with HART protocol\(^{(1,2)}\)
- **C**: 4-20 mA dc with Hart protocol and integral Transient Suppressor
- **D**: Direct Connection to Model 348 Field Mounted Controller or Spare Capsule

#### Process Diaphragm
- **H**: Hastelloy C-276\(^{(1,2)}\)
- **S**: 316L SS
- **B**: Hastelloy C-276 with 1 Remote Seal (specify AA for Body Parts)

#### Body Parts
- **Wetted Process Connection**
  - **AA**: 316SS ½ NPT\(^{(1,2,3)}\)
  - **BA**: Hastelloy C-276 ½ NPT

#### Fill Fluid
- **B**: Silicone DC200\(^{(1,2)}\)
- **C**: Inert
- **D**: Paratherm

#### Output Indicator
- **5**: 4-½ Digit Digital Smart Display\(^{TM/2}\)
- **N**: Not Required\(^{(5)}\)

#### Standard Options
- **X**: Oxygen Cleaned
- **Y**: Special Features\(^{(4)}\)
- **N**: Not Required\(^{(5)}\)

#### Mounting Bracket
- **1**: 2" Pipe Mount Bracket with SS Hardware\(^{(2)}\)
- **2**: Universal Bracket
- **3**: 2" Pipe Mount 316SS Bracket
- **N**: Not Required\(^{(5)}\)

#### Housing
- **1**: Aluminum ½ - 14 NPT\(^{(1,2)}\)
- **2**: Aluminum M20 x 1.5\(^{(6)}\)
- **N**: Not Required \(^{(5)}\)

#### Hazardous Area Classification
- **2**: CSA All/CRN Registration
- **3**: FM/CSA All\(^{(1,2)}\)
- **M**: CENELEC EExd\(^{(14)}\)
- **R**: SAA All and ABS Type Approved
- **L**: CENELEC EExia and BASEEFA Type N
- **N**: Non-Approved\(^{(5)}\)
- **W**: FM/CSA All and ABS Type Approved

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>340G</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sample Model Number</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

\(^{(1)}\) See page 9-1 for these notes.

\(^{(2)}\) For orders requiring \(10^6\) or more units.

\(^{(3)}\) \(1/2\) NPT for models with \(10^6\) or more units.

\(^{(4)}\) Special features not available for Hazardous Location Models.

\(^{(5)}\) Not available for \(10^6\) or more units.
### TABLE 9-4 Model 340F, Model Designation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic Model Number</th>
<th>Notes: Superscript (#) - See page 9-1 for these notes.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Input Range: Span Limits, Min/Max**

- **D** 10/450 inH₂O (2.5/112.5 kPa) \(^{(2)}\)
- **F** 12.6/450 psi (87/3100 kPa) \(^{(2)}\)

**Output**

- **B** 4-20 mA&c with HART protocol \(^{(1)(2)}\)
- **C** 4-20 mA&c with HART protocol and integral Transient Suppressor

**Body Parts** (HA = Hastelloy) (S = Standard on all ranges)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A0 316SS</td>
<td>HA-C276/316SS Flush</td>
<td>H0 HA C-276</td>
<td>Remote Seal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2 316SS</td>
<td>HA-C276/316SS 2&quot;</td>
<td>H2 HA C-276</td>
<td>Remote Seal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A4 316SS</td>
<td>HA-C276/316SS 4&quot;</td>
<td>H4 HA C-276</td>
<td>Remote Seal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A6 316SS</td>
<td>HA-C276/316SS 6&quot;</td>
<td>H6 HA C-276</td>
<td>Remote Seal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B0 HA C-276</td>
<td>HA-C276/316SS Flush</td>
<td>J0 Monel</td>
<td>Remote Seal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B2 HA C-276</td>
<td>HA-C276/316SS 2&quot;</td>
<td>J2 Monel</td>
<td>Remote Seal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B4 HA C-276</td>
<td>HA-C276/316SS 4&quot;</td>
<td>J4 Monel</td>
<td>Remote Seal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B6 HA C-276</td>
<td>HA-C276/316SS 6&quot;</td>
<td>J6 Monel</td>
<td>Remote Seal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C0 Monel</td>
<td>HA-C276/316SS Flush</td>
<td>K0 Tantalum</td>
<td>Remote Seal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2 Monel</td>
<td>HA-C276/316SS 2&quot;</td>
<td>N0 HA C-276</td>
<td>HA-C276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4 Monel</td>
<td>HA-C276/316SS 4&quot;</td>
<td>N2 HA C-276</td>
<td>HA-C276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C6 Monel</td>
<td>HA-C276/316SS 6&quot;</td>
<td>N4 HA C-276</td>
<td>HA-C276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D0 Tantalum</td>
<td>HA-C276/316SS Flush</td>
<td>N6 HA C-276</td>
<td>HA-C276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G0 316SS</td>
<td>Remote Seal</td>
<td>Q0 Monel</td>
<td>HA-C276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G2 316SS</td>
<td>Remote Seal</td>
<td>Q2 Monel</td>
<td>HA-C276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G4 316SS</td>
<td>Remote Seal</td>
<td>Q4 Monel</td>
<td>HA-C276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G6 316SS</td>
<td>Remote Seal</td>
<td>Q6 Monel</td>
<td>HA-C276</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Mounting Flange** (CS = Carbon Steel) (SS = Stainless Steel)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Rating</th>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Rating</th>
<th>Material</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A 2&quot;</td>
<td>150#</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td>J 3&quot;</td>
<td>150#</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B 2&quot;</td>
<td>300#</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td>K 3&quot;</td>
<td>300#</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C 3&quot;</td>
<td>150#</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td>L 4&quot;</td>
<td>150#</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D 3&quot;</td>
<td>300#</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td>M 4&quot;</td>
<td>300#</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E 4&quot;</td>
<td>150#</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td>N 50mm</td>
<td>10/16 Bar CS</td>
<td>S 100mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F 4&quot;</td>
<td>300#</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td>P 50mm</td>
<td>25/40 Bar CS</td>
<td>T 100mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G 2&quot;</td>
<td>150#</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>Q 80mm</td>
<td>10/16 Bar CS</td>
<td>U 50mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H 2&quot;</td>
<td>300#</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>R 80mm</td>
<td>25/40 Bar CS</td>
<td>V 50mm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fill Fluid**

- **B** Silicon DC200
- **C** Fluorolube Inert
- **D** NEOBEE Paratherm
- **E** Silicone DC200
- **F** Silicone DC704
- **G** Syltherm 800
- **N** Not Required

**Output Indicator**

- **5** 4-½ Digit Digital Smart Display™\(^{(2)}\)

**Standard Options**

- **X** Oxygen Cleaned
- **Y** Special Features\(^{(4)}\)
- **N** Not Required\(^{(2)}\)

**Mounting Bracket**

- **N** Not Required

**Housing**

- **1** Aluminum ½ - 14 NPT\(^{(1)(2)}\)
- **2** Aluminum M20 x 1.5\(^{(6)}\)

**Hazardous Area Classification**

- **2** CSA All/CRN Registration
- **3** FM/CSA All\(^{(1)(2)}\)
- **M** CENELEC EExed\(^{(4)}\)
- **R** SAA All & ABS Type Approved
- **L** CENELEC EEExia & BASEEFA Type N
- **N** Non-Approved
- **W** FM/CSA All & ABS Type Approved

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic Model Number</th>
<th>Notes: Superscript (#) - See page 9-1 for these notes.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**May 1998**
### TABLE 9-5 Model 340 Sterling High Performance

#### Basic Model Number
340 Sterling High Performance Transmitter-Controller

#### Type and Input Range: Span Limits, Min/Max
- **DD** Differential: 10/450 inH₂O (2.5/112.5 kPa)
- **FD** Flanged Level: 10/450 inH₂O (2.5/112.5 kPa)
- **GF** Gauge: 12.6/450 psi (87/3100 kPa)

#### Output
- E 4-20 mAdc High Performance Output with HART protocol

#### Diaphragm
- H Hastelloy C-276

#### Body Parts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wetted Process Connection Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DA 316SS ½ NPT D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB 316SS ¼ NPT D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GA 316SS ½ NPT G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FA Carbon Steel 2&quot;, 150# CS F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FB Carbon Steel 2&quot;, 300# CS F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FC Carbon Steel 3&quot;, 150# CS F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FD Carbon Steel 3&quot;, 300# CS F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FE Carbon Steel 4&quot;, 150# CS F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF Carbon Steel 4&quot;, 300# CS F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FG Stainless Steel 2&quot;, 150# CS F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FH Stainless Steel 2&quot;, 300# CS F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FI Stainless Steel 3&quot;, 150# CS F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FJ Stainless Steel 3&quot;, 300# CS F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FK Stainless Steel 4&quot;, 150# CS F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FL Stainless Steel 4&quot;, 300# CS F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Fill Fluid
- B Silicone DC200(1)

#### Output Indicator
- 5 4-½ Digit Digital Smart Display™
- N Not Required

#### Standard Options
- X Oxygen Cleared
- Y Special Features(4)
- N Not Required

#### Mounting Bracket
1 2" Pipe Mount Bracket with SS Hardware
2 Universal Bracket
3 2" Pipe Mount 316SS Bracket
N Not Required

#### Housing
1 Aluminum ½ - 14 NPT(1)
2 Aluminum M20 x 1.5(6)

#### Hazardous Area Classification
- 2 CSA All/CRN Registration
- 3 FM/CSA All(1)
- M CENELEC EXd(14)
- R SAA All and ABS Type Approved
- L CENELEC EXia and BASEEFA Type N
- N Non-Approved
- W FM/CSA All and ABS Type Approved

---

340 DD E H DA B 5 N N 1 3 Sample Model Number
## TABLE 9-6 Model 340 With Tantalum Diaphragms

### Basic Model Number
340 Absolute, Gauge, and Differential Pressure Transmitter-Controller with Tantalum Diaphragms

### Type and Input Range: Span Limits, Min/Max

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Input Range</th>
<th>Min/Max (kPa)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Differential</td>
<td>0.75/15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DD</td>
<td>Differential</td>
<td>10/450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GD</td>
<td>Gauge</td>
<td>10/450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GF</td>
<td>Gauge</td>
<td>12.6/450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Absolute</td>
<td>10/450 Abs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td>Absolute</td>
<td>12.6/450 psi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Output
- B 4-20 mA with HART protocol
- C 4-20 mA with HART protocol and integral Transient Suppressor
- D Direct Connection to Model 348 Field Mounted Controller or Spare Capsule

### Diaphragm
- T Tantalum

### Body Parts (Process Connection)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hi Side</th>
<th>Lo Side</th>
<th>Use with</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TB</td>
<td>Hastelloy-C 316SS</td>
<td>A, G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC</td>
<td>Hastelloy-C Hastelloy-C</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TD</td>
<td>Monel 316SS</td>
<td>A, G(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TE</td>
<td>Monel Monel</td>
<td>D(1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Fill Fluid
- B Silicone DC200
- C Inert(13)

### Output Indicator
- 5 4-½ Digit Digital Smart Display™
- N Not Required

### Standard Options
- X Oxygen Cleaned
- Y Special Features(4)
- N Not Required(5)

### Mounting Bracket
- 1 2" Pipe Mount Bracket with SS Hardware
- 2 Universal Bracket
- 3 2" Pipe Mount 316SS Bracket
- N Not Required(5)

### Housing
- 1 Aluminum ½ - 14 NPT(1)
- 2 Aluminum M20 x 1.5(6)
- N Not Required(5)

### Hazardous Area Classification
- 2 CSA All/CRN Registered
- 3 FM/CSA Alt(1)
- M CENELEC EExd(14)
- R SAA All and ABS Type Approved
- L CENELEC EExia and BASEEFA Type N
- N Non-Approved
- W FM/CSA All and ABS Type Approved

Sample Model Number: 340 DB B T TA B N N N N 3
9.2 ACCESSORIES

Table 9-7 lists many of the accessories available for Model 340s. Additional information about many transmitter accessories can be found in PI34-3, XTC Transmitter Accessory Guide.

### TABLE 9-7 Model 340 Accessories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>MODEL 340</th>
<th>PART NUMBER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Three-Valve Manifold, Steel*</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>16275-252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three-Valve Manifold, 316 SS*</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>16275-251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transient Suppressor*</td>
<td>● ● ●</td>
<td>14999-287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Purpose Power Supply, 24 Vdc, 2A*</td>
<td>● ● ●</td>
<td>15124-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field Mounted Power Supply, 28 Vdc, 125 mA*</td>
<td>● ● ●</td>
<td>16055-299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2” Pipe Mount Bracket, CS</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>16275-121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2” Pipe Mount Bracket, SS</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>16275-113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Universal Bracket, Pipe and Flat Surface Mount</td>
<td>● ● ●</td>
<td>20027-166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2” Pipe Mount Bracket, CS</td>
<td>● ● ●</td>
<td>16275-123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2” Pipe Mount Bracket, SS</td>
<td>● ● ●</td>
<td>16275-115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Universal Bracket, Pipe and Flat Surface Mount</td>
<td>● ● ●</td>
<td>15965-619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Universal HART Communicator</td>
<td>● ● ●</td>
<td>275D9E15B0100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Refer to GCMC-1, Measurement & Control Product Catalog, for additional details.

● = For use with transmitter model in table column head; ○ = not for use.

9.3 SPECIFICATIONS

The following specifications are for all transmitter models except as noted.

9.3.1 Mechanical

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARAMETER</th>
<th>MODEL 340D</th>
<th>MODEL 340A/G</th>
<th>MODEL 340F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmitter Dimensions</td>
<td>Figure 9-1</td>
<td>Figure 9-2</td>
<td>Figure 4-14, Table 4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2” Pipe Mount Bracket</td>
<td>Figure 4-10</td>
<td>Figure 4-11</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Universal Bracket</td>
<td>Figure 4-12</td>
<td>Figures 4-13</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2” Pipe Mount 316 SS Bracket</td>
<td>Figure 4-10</td>
<td>Figure 4-11</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight, approximate</td>
<td>7 lbs (3.2 kg)</td>
<td>4 lbs (1.8 kg) *</td>
<td>20 lbs (9.1 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2” Pipe Mount Bracket</td>
<td>2 lbs (0.9 kg)</td>
<td>2 lbs (0.9 kg)</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Universal Bracket</td>
<td>2.5 lbs (1.1 kg)</td>
<td>2.5 lbs (1.1 kg)</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2” Pipe Mount 316 SS Bracket</td>
<td>2 lbs (0.9 kg)</td>
<td>2 lbs (0.9 kg)</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* 340 A/G with tantalum diaphragm: 7 lbs (3.2 kg)
Electronics Housing

Epoxy Powder Coated, Low Copper Cast Aluminum

NEMA 4X/6P (IP66/IP68)

Electrical Conduit Entrance, ½-14 NPT, quantity 2; M20 x 1.5 optional

Process Wetted Parts

Various Materials Available

NACE MR0175-96 compliant with options as noted in the model number tables. See certificate at the end of this section.

Process Connections

Model 340 D..................¼ NPTF with vent/drain, quantity 2, (½ NPTF with process adapters provided)

Model 340A/G* ............½ NPTF, no vent/drain, quantity 1, (external block and bleed may be purchased separately)

Model 340F ..................High Pressure Side: Per flange size and rating selected
                      Low Pressure Side: ¼ NPTF with vent/drain (½ NPTF with process adapter provided)

*340A/G Transmitters with tantalum diaphragms have process connections that are similar to 340D (see drawings).
Notes:
1. Dimensions are in inches (millimeters).
2. Process Connection Blocks, not shown, provide a 1/2 NPT process connection and can be rotated 180° to give the following connection centers:
   - 2.00 (50.1)
   - 2.13 (54.1)
   - 2.25 (57.2)
3. Terminal Board with isolated TIE terminal shown with enclosure end cap removed.
4. Also shows Models 340A and 340G with tantalum diaphragms.

**FIGURE 9-1** Dimensions, Model 340D Transmitter (See Note 4)
Note:

1. Dimensions are in inches (millimeters).

2. Terminal Board with isolated TIE terminal shown with enclosure cap removed.

3. For a Model 340A or 340G with a tantalum diaphragm, see Figure 9-1.

**FIGURE 9-2 Dimensions, Model 340A and 340G (See Note 3)**
9.3.2 Performance and Functional Specifications

Reference conditions: Zero-based spans, Ambient temperature 23°C, D/A trim values equal to span end points, Silicone fill, Hastelloy-C diaphragms, 1 second damping.

Accuracy (Accuracy includes the effects of linearity, hysteresis and repeatability.)

Analog Output

Range A:

\[
\pm 0.2\% \text{ of calibrated span for spans from } 1:1 \text{ to } 2:1 \text{ of URL} \\
\pm (0.174 + 0.013[\text{URL/span}]) \% \text{ of calibrated span for spans from } 2:1 \text{ to } 25:1 \text{ of URL}
\]

Range B:

\[
\pm 0.1\% \text{ of calibrated span for spans from } 1:1 \text{ to } 2.5:1 \text{ of URL} \\
\pm (0.043 + 0.0228[\text{URL/span}]) \% \text{ of calibrated span for spans from } 2.5:1 \text{ to } 20:1 \text{ of URL}
\]

Ranges D, F, and G:

\[
\pm 0.1\% \text{ of calibrated span for spans from } 1:1 \text{ to } 10:1 \text{ of URL} \\
\pm (0.028 + 0.0072[\text{URL/span}]) \% \text{ of calibrated span for spans from } 10:1 \text{ to } 45:1 \text{ of URL}
\]

Digital Output

Ranges D, F, and G:

\[
\pm 0.075\% \text{ of reading or } 0.015\% \text{ of URL, whichever is greater}
\]

Sterling Units:

\[
\pm 0.035\% \text{ of reading or } 0.006\% \text{ of URL, whichever is greater}
\]

Range and Sensor Limits

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RANGE</th>
<th>MIN. SPAN</th>
<th>LRL/URL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>340D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>0.20”</td>
<td>-2/5”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.5 kPa)</td>
<td>(5/1.25 kPa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>0.75”</td>
<td>-15/15”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.185 kPa)</td>
<td>(-3.7/3.7 kPa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>10”</td>
<td>-450/450”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2.5 kPa)</td>
<td>(-112.5/112.5 kPa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>12.6 psi</td>
<td>-150/450 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(87 kPa)</td>
<td>(689/3100 kPa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>300 psi</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2068 kPa)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Zero Elevation and Suppression

The range may be set anywhere between the LRL and URL of the transmitter, as long as the calibrated span does not exceed the minimum allowable span (see Range and Sensor Limits table). Zero and span in the XTC are non-interactive.

Electronic Damping (Digital Filter)

Adjustable between 0 and 30 seconds

Transmitter Outputs

Each transmitter has:
- Analog, two-wire, 4-20 mA
- Digital, HART Communications
- Transient Suppressor (optional)

Power Supply Requirements - (for CENELEC EEx d [ia] ia requirements see Appendix E)

Minimum Terminal-to-Terminal Compliance Voltage: +10 Vdc

Maximum Terminal-to-Terminal Voltage: +42 Vdc

Maximum Load: \( RL = 50 \times V_{FS} - 500\Omega \)

To ensure digital communications, HART requires:
- Loop Resistance ............... 250 to 1100\(\Omega\)
- Ripple .................. 0.2 Vp-p, 47-125 Hz
- Noise .................. 0.6 mV RMS maximum
- Impedance .................. 10\(\Omega\) maximum

Turn-On Time

The transmitter will perform within specifications within 60 seconds after power is applied.

Local Indication

Optional 4½ Digit Smart Display
Maximum Working Pressure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RANGE</th>
<th>340D</th>
<th>340A</th>
<th>340G</th>
<th>340F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>±100 psi (^1) (±689 kPa)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>±100 psi (^1) (±689 kPa)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>±4000 psi (±27.6 kPa) 250 psi (1.72 MPa)</td>
<td>250 psi (1.72 MPa)</td>
<td>Per flange</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>±4000 psi (±27.6 kPa) 1500 psi (10.3 MPa)</td>
<td>1500 psi (10.3 MPa)</td>
<td>Per flange</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Contact the factory</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) The Maximum Working Pressure (MWP) is defined as the maximum pressure that can be applied to the cell without damage, static or otherwise.

\(^2\) 340D Range A and Range B sensors have a body rating of ±4000 psi; however, no overpressure protection is employed in these units, thereby limiting MWP to ±100 psi.

Flange Ratings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STANDARD</th>
<th>CLASS</th>
<th>CARBON STEEL RATING</th>
<th>STAINLESS STEEL RATING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI</td>
<td>150#</td>
<td>285 psi(^1)</td>
<td>275 psi(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI</td>
<td>300#</td>
<td>740 psi(^1)</td>
<td>720 psi(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIN</td>
<td>PN 10/16</td>
<td>16 bar(^2)</td>
<td>16 bar(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIN</td>
<td>PN 10/16</td>
<td>40 bar(^2)</td>
<td>40 bar(^2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) At 100°F (38°C), the rating decreases with increasing temperature.

\(^2\) At 120°C, the rating decreases with increasing temperature.

Network Topology

Point-to-Point

Transmitter Quantity ......................... 1
Network Signal and Connection........ Analog 4-20 mA, single current loop, see Figures 4-6, 4-7, and 4-8.
Network Resistance ......................... See figure on previous page.

Multi-Drop

Transmitter Quantity ......................... 1-15
Network Signal and Connection........ Digital, parallel connected, see Figure 4-9.
9.3.3 Two-Wire Cable

Type ................................................................. Twisted single-pair, shielded, copper

Conductor Size for Network Length
- Less than 5000 feet (1524 m) ....................... 24 AWG minimum
- More than 5000 feet (1524 m) ...................... 20 AWG minimum, 16 AWG maximum

Cable Capacitance .............................................. Refer to Section 4.3.6

Recommendation ................................................. Belden 8641, 24 AWG
- Belden 8762, 20 AWG

Length, Maximum ............................................... Refer to Section 4.3.6

9.3.4 Environmental

Ambient Temperature Effect

Models 340A, 340D and 340G
- Ranges A and B: ±(0.175% URL + 0.075% span) per 28°C (50°F)
- Ranges D, F, and G: ±(0.075% URL + 0.075% span) per 28°C (50°F)

Model 340F
- Ranges D and F*: ±(0.075% URL + 0.075% span + 1.5 inH2O) per 28°C (50°F)
  * For 3" and 4" flanges only. For smaller flanges, consult the factory.

Temperature Limits

Sensor Assembly*
- Silicone: -40 to 125°C (-40 to 257°F)
- Inert fill: 0 to 85°C (32 to 185°F)
- Paratherm: -20 to 125°C (-4 to 257°F)

Electronics
- -40 to 85°C (-40 to 185°F)
  *Limit to 85°C in vacuum service

Stability

Zero Stability:
- Range A: ±0.1% of URL for 6 months
- Ranges B-G: ±0.1% of URL for 12 months

Span Stability: No measurable drift

Humidity

0-100% relative humidity, non-condensing
Maximum Moisture

- Operating: Less than 0.050 lb. H₂O per lb. of dry air
- Storage: Less than 0.028 lb. H₂O per lb. of dry air

Corrosive Atmosphere

Class G3 (Harsh) environment per ISA-S71.04

Vibration Effect

Less than ±0.05% of maximum span per G for 0 to 60 Hz in any axis up to 2Gs maximum

Power Supply Effect

Less than ±0.005% of output span per volt

EMI/RFI Susceptibility

Less than 0.25% of maximum span at 30 V/m, 30 MHz - 1 GHz

ESD Susceptibility

IEC severity level 4, 15 kV

Surge Protection (Standard units, either loop terminal to enclosure)

±60 Vdc from 5 µF capacitor through 600Ω +2500V at 150Ω source resistance

Surge Protection (with optional Transient Suppressor)

- Maximum clamping voltage (either loop terminal to enclosure)
  - DC ................................................................. 68 V
  - 100 kV per microsecond AC surge............... 70 V peak
  - 1000 kV per microsecond AC surge......... 120 V peak
- Transient surge current
  - Up to 5000 amp for 20 microseconds, repeated strikes

Static Pressure Effect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RANGE</th>
<th>SPAN ERROR CORRECTABLE TO: *</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>0.2% per 100 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>0.2% per 1000 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>0.2% per 1000 pse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Zero effect eliminated at operating pressure.
9.3.5 Hazardous Area Classification

Transmitters are designed for the following classifications. Before installing, applying power to, or servicing a transmitter, see the transmitter’s nameplate and the Tables in Section 9.1 for the electrical classification. Contact Moore Products Co. for latest approvals and certifications.

**CE Approved**
EN50081-1:1992 and EN50082-2; see Declaration of Conformity on a following page.

**ABS Type approved**

**FM/CSA Approval**
- **Intrinsically Safe:** Class I, Division 1, Groups A, B, C, and D  
  Class II, Division 1, Groups E, F, and G  
  Class III, Division 1  
- **Explosion Proof:** Class I, Division 1, Groups B, C, and D  
  Class II, Division 1, Groups E, F, and G  
  Class III, Division 1  
- **Non-Incendive:** Class I, Division 2, Groups A, B, C and D

**CENELEC Approval**
- **Intrinsically Safe:** EEx ia IIC T6, T5, T4  
- **Explosion Proof:** EEx d [ia] ia IIC T4

**SAA Approval**
- **Intrinsically Safe:** Ex ia IIC T6  
- **Explosion Proof:** Ex d IIB T6  
- **Non-incendive:** Ex n DIP IIC T6

**BASEEFA Approval**
- **Ex N IIC T4**  
  (Tamb -40°C to +85°C)  
  in accordance with BS6941:1988
- **Ex N IIC T5**  
  (Tamb -40°C to +40°C)
9.3.5.1 CSA Hazardous Locations Precautions

This section provides CSA hazardous location precautions that should be observed by the user when installing or servicing the equipment described in this manual. These statements supplement those given in the preceding section.

**WARNING**

Failure to observe the following precautions could result in an explosion hazard.

**Precautions - English**

For Class I, Division 1 and Class I, Division 2 hazardous locations:

- Use only factory-authorized replacement parts. Substitution of components can impair the suitability of this equipment for hazardous locations.

For Division 2 hazardous locations:

When the equipment described in this Instruction is installed without safety barriers, the following precautions should be observed. Switch off electrical power at its source (in non-hazardous location) before connecting or disconnecting power, signal, or other wiring.

**Précautions - Français**

Emplacements dangereux de classe I, division 1 et classe I, division 2:

- Les pièces de rechange doivent être autorisées par l’usine. Les substitutions peuvent rendre cet appareil impropre à l’utilisation dans les emplacements dangereux.

Emplacement dangereux de division 2:

Lorsque l’appareil décrit dans la notice ci-jointe est installé sans barrières de sécurité, on doit couper l’alimentation électrique a la source (hors de l’emplacement dangereux) avant d’effectuer les opérations suivantes branchement ou débranchement d’un circuit de puissance, de signalisation ou autre.

9.3.6 Special Conditions For Safe Use

**BASEEFA**

1. The enclosure must be earthed by means of the external earth connection.

2. The installation of the external connections and plugging of the unused entry must be carried out so as to maintain the IP66 and IP68 degree of protection using devices capable of withstanding a 3.5 Joule impact.

3. The external connections must be made using suitable sized cable lugs.
DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY
according to EN 45014

We

Moore Products Co.
Sumneytown Pike, Spring House, PA 19477

declare under our sole responsibility that the product,

Model 340, Pressure Transmitter with any factory installed options and in any configuration available from the factory

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standards or other normative documents

EMC: EN50081-1 and EN50081-2 Emissions
EN50082-1 and EN50082-2 Immunity

following the provisions of the EMC directive

Spring House, PA U. S. A. [Signature] 10 Nov. 95

James O. Moore
General Manager
Measurement and Control Division
CERTIFICATE OF NACE COMPLIANCE

We Moore Products Co.
Sumneytown Pike
Spring House, Pa 19477

certify under our sole responsibility that the product

Model 340 Pressure Transmitter-Controllers with factory configured options as noted below

Process Diaphragm Code: H (Hastelloy-C-276)
Body Parts Code: AA, AB, AC, AD, AE, AF, AG, AH (316 SS)
Standard Options Code: D (B7M Bolts), E (B8M Bolts) Model 340D Only

are in compliance with NACE MR0175-96.

Peter F. Schiano
Director of Engineering & Manufacturing
Measurement & Control Division
Moore Products Co.
Spring House, Pa USA
10.0 GLOSSARY

Defined below are terms relevant to the fields of pressure measurement and HART networks.

**ABSOLUTE (abs) PRESSURE** – A pressure measured against absolute zero or a total vacuum as a reference. The units of measurement are called absolute pressure units. For example: psia = pounds per square inch absolute.

**ANALOG SIGNALING** – A low-current signal of 4 to 20 mAdc from a field instrument to a primary master or non-signaling hardware.

**ANSI** – American National Standards Institute

**APACS®** - Advanced Process Automation and Control System - Moore Products Co.’s solution to your process automation and control needs. APACS combines the advantages of a distributed control system (DCS) with those of a programmable logic controller (PLC) to meet the demands of both continuous and batch processes.

**AWG** – American Wire Gauge

**BARRIER** – A device designed to limit the voltage and current in a hazardous area even if certain types of faults occur on the non-hazardous side of the barrier.

**BARRIER RESISTANCE** – The maximum end-to-end resistance of a barrier, as specified by the barrier manufacturer. If both supply and return barriers are used in a network, the barrier resistance is the sum of the end-to-end resistance of both barriers. For active barriers that use resistance to limit current, the barrier resistance is the internal resistance between the hazardous area terminal and the barrier internal node where voltage is regulated.

**COMMISSIONING** – Testing of a transmitter and loop to verify transmitter configuration and loop operation and wiring.

**CONFIGURATION** – A database (or archive) created using a HART Communicator and downloaded to a transmitter to define transmitter operation.

**CONFIGURE/CONFIGURING** – The entering of specific parameter data into a HART Communicator to be downloaded to a transmitter to define that transmitter’s operating characteristics.

**CURRENT SENSE RESISTANCE** – The resistance in a network across which the field instrument (transmitter) signal voltages are developed.

**DAMPING** – A user-selectable output characteristic that increases the response time of a transmitter to smooth the output when the input signal contains rapid variations.

**DIGITAL SIGNALING** – The high frequency HART signal.

**EXPLOSION-PROOF ENCLOSURE** – An enclosure that can withstand the explosion of gases within it and prevent the explosion of gases surrounding it due to sparks, flashes, or the explosion of the container itself, and maintain an external temperature that will not ignite the surrounding gases.
**FIELD INSTRUMENT** – A network element that uses current variation for digital signaling or digital plus analog signaling.

**GAUGE PRESSURE** – A pressure measured against atmospheric or barometric pressure as a reference. The units of measurement are called gauge pressure units. For example: psig = pounds per square inch gauge.

**HART** – Highway Addressable Remote Transducer – A communication protocol that provides simultaneous analog and digital signaling between master and slave devices. It is supported by the HART Communications Foundation.

**HART NETWORK** – A single pair of cabled wires and the attached communicating HART elements.

**INTRINSICALLY SAFE INSTRUMENT** – An instrument that will not produce any spark or thermal effects under normal or abnormal conditions that will ignite a specified gas mixture.

**LOWER RANGE LIMIT (LRL)** – The lowest value of the measured variable that a transmitter or other measurement device can be configured to measure.

**LOWER RANGE VALUE (LRV)** – Representing the 4 mA point in the transmitter’s output, the LRV is the lowest value of the measured value that the transmitter can be configured to measure.

**MAXIMUM OVERRANGE** – The maximum pressure (static + differential) that can be applied safely to a transmitter.

**MULTI-DROP NETWORK** – A HART network having from 1 to 15 field instruments that are parallel connected on a single 2-wire cable. This network uses digital signaling only.

**NETWORK** – A network includes the following items:
- Transmitter(s)
- Network element (controller, recorder, passive non-signaling element, or other device)
- Cabling interconnecting these devices
- Barriers for intrinsic safety, if installed
- Current sense resistor

**NETWORK ELEMENT** – Any field instrument or primary or secondary master.

**NETWORK RESISTANCE** – The sum of the current sense resistance, barrier resistance, if any, and any other resistance on the network.

**NPT** – National Pipe Thread

**POINT-TO-POINT NETWORK** – A network having a single field instrument and primary master. Analog signaling or analog plus digital signaling is possible.

**POLLING ADDRESS** – A unique number assigned during configuration that identifies a transmitter connected to a network. An address between 1 and 15 assigned to a transmitter connected to a Multi-Drop network. A transmitter connected to a Point-to-Point network has 0 as an address.
**PRIMARY MASTER** – The single controlling network element that communicates with one or more field instruments.

**RERANGING** – Changing a transmitter’s 4 and 20 mA settings (i.e., setting LRV and URV); this is a configuration function.

**SECONDARY MASTER** – An occasional user of a network, such as the HART Communicator.

**SEDIMENT** – Solid material that settles in a liquid or gas and can cause blockage that may affect pressure measurement.

**SPAN** – Algebraic difference between the upper and lower range values (URV and LRV).

**TRANSUCER** – A device that accepts an input, such as pressure, and converts that input into an output of some other form, such as a voltage.

**UPPER RANGE LIMIT (URL)** – The highest value of the measured variable that a transmitter can be configured to measure.

**UPPER RANGE VALUE (URV)** – Representing the 20 mA point in a transmitter’s output, this is the highest value of the measured variable that the transmitter is currently configured to measure.
A.0 APPENDIX A - FUNCTION BLOCKS

This section provides a detailed description of each function block in a Model 340 Transmitter. Default configuration information can be found in Appendix C. Below is a block diagram of the function block arrangement in the transmitter.

FIGURE A-1 Function Block Arrangement in Model 340 Transmitters
A.1 WRITE PROTECT BLOCK

The write protect parameter, when configured as “on,” blocks all HART commands which write to the transmitter. The transmitter will still be accessible by a Model 275 HART Communicator or other HART Masters, but these devices will only be able to read data from the transmitter. For example, if write protect were “on,” the transmitter could not be re-ranged. To enable write commands, configure the write protect parameter as “off.”

A.2 SENSOR INPUT BLOCK

The Sensor Input Block allows the user to configure those parameters which pertain to the pressure sensor. Sensor Input Block parameters are listed below; a description of each parameter then follows.

- Measured Variable Units: inH₂O, inHg, ftH₂O, mmH₂O, mmHg, PSI, BAR, mBAR, g/sq cm, kg/sq cm, PA, kPA, Torr, Atm
- Measured Variable Range Lo: -999999 to 999999
- Measured Variable Range Hi: -999999 to 999999
- Damping Time Constant: 0 to 30 Seconds
- Transfer Function: Linear, \( x^{1/2} \), \( x^{3/2} \), \( x^{5/2} \)
- Transfer Function Cutoff: 0 to 30%
- Zero Dropout: 0 to 30%

**Measured Variable Units**

These are the recognized pressure units within the HART Protocol. Pressure units are selected from a pre-configured list. Other pressure units must be converted to one of these 14 units.

**Measured Variable Lo (MV Lo) & Measured Variable Hi (MV Hi)**

These two parameters determine the range of the transmitter. The MV Lo parameter represents the pressure that will cause the transmitter to output 4 mA. The MV Hi parameter represents the pressure that will cause the transmitter to output 20 mA. These two parameters are non-interactive. Changing one does not effect the other. Furthermore, these parameters can be configured to make the transmitter forward acting or reverse acting, that is, the MV Hi parameter does not have to be configured for a higher pressure than the MV Lo parameter. For example, 100 to 0 PSI is an allowable range with 4mA being transmitted at 100 PSI and 20mA being transmitted at 0 PSI.

The actual limits for the MV Lo and Hi parameters, as well as the span, are determined by the particular sensor range at hand. The Upper Sensor Limit (USL) and Lower Sensor Limit (LSL) are listed along with the Sensor Input Block parameters when using a HART Communicator; otherwise, check the transmitter model number against the model designation list in Section 9 for these limits.
Damping

The Damping parameter is used to configure the time constant for the transmitter. This can be used to quiet noisy process signals; however, when configuring this parameter remember that it takes 4-5 time constants to respond to 99.9% of a step input change. The default damping value is one second.

Transfer Function

The transmitter has several built in transfer functions for extracting the flow signal from various, common primary flow elements. The most common transfer function is the square root ($x^{1/2}$) used with orifice plates. Also included are $x^{3/2}$ and $x^{5/2}$ transfer functions for use with wedge and V-notched weir flow elements. If the transmitter is not being used with one of these flow elements, simply select a linear transfer function.

Transfer Function Cutoff

The square root transfer function has high gain near 0% input. To prevent small input changes (noise) from being amplified excessively, a linear segment is used on the low end of the curve. The point at which this linear segment ends and the actual transfer function begins is the Transfer Function Cutoff. This is user configurable between 0% and 30% of input.

Zero Dropout

The Zero Dropout parameter can be used in conjunction with the Transfer Function Cutoff parameter. This parameter is a value below which the transmitter’s output will be 0%. This can be used with extremely noisy process signals where the linear approximation method does produce the desired results. This is user configurable between 0% and 30% of input.

Active Input

The last feature of the Sensor Input Block is not a parameter but a tool to configure the MV Lo and Hi parameters.

If desired, the measured variable range may be configured against a precision pressure source in place of simply typing the range into the MV Lo and Hi parameters. The Active Input feature will show the user the “live” input pressure as well as the MV Lo and Hi parameters. The user then applies zero and span pressures from a precision pressure standard and copies those values directly into both the MV Lo and Hi parameters. This procedure allows the HART Communicator to mimic the operation of the local magnetic switches.

For detailed information on using the Active Input feature or the local magnetic switches, see Section 6.
A.3 CHARACTERIZER

The Characterizer Block is a 10-segment, user-configurable transfer function. This function block can be used to linearize either an unusual flow element, an odd-shaped tank, or in a process control application, a non-linear valve. Characterizer Block parameters are listed below, with descriptions following.

- **Characterizer**
  - Parameter: On/Off
  - Description: This parameter is used to turn the characterizer on or off.

- **Characterizer Position**
  - Parameter: Transmitter Output/Controller Output
  - Description: This parameter determines whether the Characterizer Block is located before or after the Controller Block. The characterizer can be used in conjunction with any of the built-in transfer functions if desired.

- **X0…X10 and Y0…Y10**
  - Parameter: 0.0 to 100.0%
  - Description: These parameters specify the values for the 10 x-y coordinates that make up the characterizer segments. The coordinates are always specified in percent.

A.4 TOTALIZER BLOCK

The Totalizer Block is used to totalize the measured variable. This is typically done with differential pressure transmitters when the measured variable represents the flow rate, although the totalizer is available in all Model 340 transmitters.

At power-up the totalizer begins counting. Go to the Model 275 HART Communicator’s Quick Access Key menu to start, stop, or reset the totalizer at any time. The totalizer will stop counting when a configurable parameter is changed using either the Communicator or the magnetic pushbuttons. Restart the totalizer from the Quick Access Key menu on the Communicator.

Totalizer Block parameters are listed below, with a description of each following.

- **Fullscale Value**
  - Parameter: 0.001 to 19999
  - Description: The fullscale value parameter.

- **Timebase**
  - Parameter: SEC/MIN/HR/DAY/WK
  - Description: The timebase parameter.

- **Multiplier**
  - Parameter: 0.001 to 19999
  - Description: The multiplier parameter.

- **Zero Dropout**
  - Parameter: 0.0 to 30.0%
  - Description: The zero dropout parameter.

- **Count Units**
  - Parameter: 4-Character ASCII
  - Description: The count units parameter.

- **Local Display**
  - Parameter: Enable/Disable
  - Description: The local display parameter.
Fullscale Value and Timebase

The Fullscale Value and Timebase parameters define the rate at which the totalizer counts for a 100% input signal. Accordingly, a 50% input signal will cause the totalizer to count at 50% of this rate.

Multiplier

If the fullscale value is too large to yield a meaningful display, a multiplier can be configured to indicate that the configured fullscale value needs to be multiplied by this number to obtain the actual totalized value.

Zero Dropout

The Zero Dropout parameter is used to force the totalizer to stop counting when the measured variable falls below the configured value. There is no deadband associated with the zero dropout feature. The Totalizer Block zero dropout feature is independent of the Sensor Input Block zero dropout feature.

Count Units

This 4-character ASCII tag is used to indicate the totalizer units. Examples could be GAL for gallons or BARR for barrels.

Local Display

The Local Display parameter is used to add the total value to the variables available at the local display. If the Operator Display Block’s local display code is configured as Total Only, the total will be the only variable available on the local display and this parameter has no bearing.

A.5 OPERATOR DISPLAY BLOCK

The Operator Display Block is used to configure the operation of the local Smart Display. Operator Display Block parameters are listed below; a description of each parameter then follows.

- Process Variable Range Lo ................................................................. -19999 to 19999
- Process Variable Range Hi ................................................................. -19999 to 19999
- Process Variable Units ........................................................................ 4-Character ASCII
- Auto Rerange ........................................................................................ Enable or Disable
- Local Display Code .............................................................. MV; PV; %; MV, PV, and %; or Totalizer Only
- Autotoggle ........................................................................................ On/Off
- Toggle Time ...................................................................................... 1 to 30 Seconds

Process Variable Lo (PV Lo), Hi (PV Hi) and Units (PV Units)

The PV Lo and PV Hi parameters are used to apply engineering units to the configured MV range. For example, the MV range might be 0 to 100 inH₂O across an orifice plate. This may represent an actual flow of 0 to 500 GPM. The PV Lo and Hi parameters could be configured as 0 and 500 respectively, and the PV Units as GPM. This range could then be shown on the local Smart Display in place of the MV Range or
percent. If no Smart Display is installed, this range could still be meaningful as other HART devices, such as the HART Communicator, can read and display this value.

**Auto Rerange**

The Auto Rerange parameter can be used to link the MV range and PV range. By configuring the Auto Rerange parameter to “on” and making a change to either the MV range or PV range, the transmitter will automatically calculate a new range for the other of the two variables. This enables the user to re-calibrate a DP flow transmitter in flow units rather than pressure units, eliminating the need to do tedious calculations through the square root extractor.

Consider the following example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original PV Range</th>
<th>Original MV Range</th>
<th>New PV Range</th>
<th>Automatically Calculated New MV Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 to 500 GPM</td>
<td>0 to 100 inH₂O</td>
<td>0 to 750 GPM</td>
<td>0 to 225 inH₂O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

Auto Rerange operates only with linear and square root transfer functions. It cannot back-calculate through the \(x^{3/2}\), \(x^{5/2}\), or Characterizer functions.

**Local Display Code**

The Local Display Code parameter is used to select variables for local indication. MV Units, PV Units, or Percent can be selected for a basic display.

A more powerful display is selected by configuring the Local Display Code as MV, PV, and Percent. This enables all variables in all units to be displayed locally. Automatic switching between variables is enabled by configuring the Autotoggle parameter, or the user can switch manually using the local magnetic switches (see Section 6 for local operation).

Also, the display can be locked to indicate only the totalizer value. Totalizer display functions are usually configured in the Totalizer Block; however, if totalizer only is selected as the Local Display Code, only the totalizer value will be indicated regardless of the Totalizer Block configuration.

The following table summarizes local display operation:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Local Display Code</th>
<th>Controller (from Controller block)</th>
<th>Totalizer Display (from Totalizer Block)</th>
<th>Variables Available on Local Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MV</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>MV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>MV, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>P in MV units, SP in MV units, V in %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>P in MV units, SP in MV units, V in %, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PV</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>PV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PV</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>PV, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PV</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>P in PV units, SP in PV units, V in %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PV</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>P in PV units, SP in PV units, V in %, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>%, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>P in %, SP in %, V in %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>P in %, SP in %, V in %, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV/PV/%</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>MV, PV, %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV/PV/%</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>MV, PV, %, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV/PV/%</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>P in MV units, P in PV units, PV in %, SP in MV units, SP in PV units, SP in %, V in %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV/PV/%</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>P in MV units, P in PV units, PV in %, SP in MV units, SP in PV units, SP in %, V in %, Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Only</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Only</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Only</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Only</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Autotoggle**

The Autotoggle parameter is used to force the local display to automatically toggle through all parameters defined by the Local Display Code.
Toggle Time

This parameter defines the time between toggling to the next variable when Autotoggle is configured “On.”

A.6 TRANSMITTER ID BLOCK

The Transmitter ID Block can be used to maintain identification information about the transmitter. Transmitter ID Block parameters are listed below; a description of each parameter then follows.

- Tag ................................ ................................ ................................ ..... 8-Character ASCII
- Descriptor ................................ ................................ ......................... 16-Character ASCII
- Message ................................ ................................ ............................ 32-Character ASCII
- Date ................................ ................................ ................................ ............. DD/MM/YY
- Device Serial Number ................................ ................................ ................. 0 to 16777215
- Polling Address ................................ ................................ ................................ ......... 0-15

Tag, Descriptor, and Message

These three parameters are ASCII text and have no bearing on transmitter output. Up to an 8-character Tag, 16-character Descriptor and 32-character Message may be entered for the transmitter.

Date

The Date parameter uses the international DD/MM/YY format. This date can be selected by the user to indicate any date or event, such as date of installation or last date of service.

Device Serial Number

The 8-digit Device Serial Number is factory configured to match the serial number on the transmitter nameplate. It is not recommended that this number be changed.

Polling Address

The Polling Address is used to place the transmitter in either analog or digital mode. A Polling Address of 0 indicates that the transmitter is in analog mode and will output a 4-20 mA current according to its calibrated range. In analog mode, a single transmitter is connected to a Point-to-Point Network.

A Polling Address between 1 and 15 indicates the transmitter is in digital mode and will output a constant 4 mA current. In digital mode, up to 15 transmitters can be connected in a Multi-Drop Network using a single twisted pair cable. For more information on Multi-Drop networks, see Section 4.
A.7 ALARM BLOCK

The Alarm Block is used to configure one or two HART alarms. Alarm Block parameters is listed below; a description of each parameter then follows.

Alarm 1 ........................................................................................................... Enable/Disable
Alarm 1 Setpoint .......................................................................................... -999999 to 999999
Alarm 1 Type .................................................................................................. High/Low

Alarm 2 ........................................................................................................... Enable/Disable
Alarm 2 Setpoint .......................................................................................... -999999 to 999999
Alarm 2 Type .................................................................................................. High/Low

Self-Clearing NAKS ...................................................................................... On/Off
Alarms Out of Service ..................................................................................... On/Off

Alarm 1 & 2

Enable or disable either alarm by setting this parameter as “Enable” or “Disable.”

Alarm 1 & 2 Setpoint

Use this parameter to configure the setpoint for the alarm. The alarm setpoints are configured in PV units.

Alarm 1 & 2 Type

This parameter determines the type of alarm, either high or low. These alarms have no associated deadband.

Self Clearing NAKS

The not acknowledge (NAK) bit in the alarm status word is set whenever the alarm goes from a no-alarm to an alarm condition. When the alarm condition clears, the NAK bit will reset if the Self-Clearing NAKS parameter is set to On. If the Self-Clearing NAKS parameter is set to Off, the NAK bit must be reset via a HART command.

Alarms Out of Service

The Alarms Out of Service parameter determines if the out-of-service bit in the alarm status word is set. This bit can be sensed by HART master devices such as the HART Communicator to indicate that the transmitter is out of service and the alarm condition should therefore be ignored.
A.8 SETPOINT TRACK AND HOLD BLOCK

Configure the Setpoint Track and Hold Block if the Controller function of the transmitter is configured “On.” Setpoint Track and Hold Block parameters are shown below, followed by a description of each.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tracking Setpoint</td>
<td>Setpoint tracks process variable when controller is in manual mode. If No, non-tracking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power-Up Setpoint</td>
<td>Setpoint value at power-up. Adjustments can be made via HART Communicator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tracking Setpoint

If this parameter is configured as “Yes,” the SP tracks the process variable when the controller is in manual mode. If it is configured as “No,” non-tracking, the SP remains at its configured value while the controller is in manual mode.

Power-Up Setpoint

The Power-Up Setpoint value is the value to which the SP is initialized at power-up. Online SP adjustments can be made using the HART Communicator via the Quick Access Key menu. This value can also be edited using local magnetic switches as described in Section 6.

A.9 CONTROLLER BLOCK

The Controller Block provides a range of proportional-integral-derivative functions including PID, PD, and ID. The function block is used to configure controller operation and tuning parameters. Controller Block parameters are listed below, followed by a description of each parameter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Controller Status</td>
<td>Turn controller On or Off. If Off, transmitter output reflects process variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controller Type</td>
<td>PID/PD/ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Reverse/Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportional Gain (PD and PID)</td>
<td>0.01 to 100.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Integral</td>
<td>0.01 to 1000 min./repeat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Derivative</td>
<td>0.01 to 100.0 min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derivative Gain</td>
<td>1.00 to 30.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Reset (PD only)</td>
<td>0.0 t o 100.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Reset Tracking (PD only)</td>
<td>No/Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Controller Status

Use this parameter to turn the controller On or Off. If Off, transmitter output reflects process variable and the Setpoint Track and Hold Block and A/M Block are dormant. If On, transmitter output reflects the valve signal. Process variable information must be obtained digitally through HART.
Controller Type

This parameter is used to select the controller type. PID, PD, and ID types are available, with each working as described below.

**PID Controller**

The PID Controller is a reset-type controller that uses external feedback to establish the integral action. The function block forces the output to track the feedback when the controller is in manual. If the derivative time TD is set to 0.00, the derivative section is eliminated.

**Equations**

\[
O = GE + R
\]

**AUTO**

\[
R = F/(TIs + 1)
\]

\[
O = ±PG[1+(TDs/([TD/DG]S+1))-S] + [1+1/TIs]
\]

**MANUAL**

\[
R = F - GE :: O = F
\]

**PD Controller**

The PD Controller is a proportional-only controller with the manual reset that can be selected as tracking or non-tracking. The function block forces the controller output to track the feedback and, when manual reset tracking is selected, the manual reset (MR) also will track the feedback when the controller is in manual.

In either case, the controller always goes back to AUTO with the output equal to the feedback. The reset value (R) then returns to the value of the MR with the time constant established by the integral time (TI). The default value of TI is 100 minutes, but it should be reduced (e.g., 0.01 minutes) when using this controller type. The TI time constant is selected for the rate at which the controller should return to normal operation after switching from manual to auto. Bear in mind that the TI time in the PD controller is not an integral time and does not affect control stability.

If the derivative time TD is set equal to 0.0, the derivative section is eliminated.

**Equations**

\[
O = GE + R
\]

**AUTO**

\[
R = MR/(TIs + 1)
\]

**MANUAL**

\[
R = F - GE :: O = F
\]

If MRT = Yes, MR = F
ID Controller

The ID Controller is an integral-only controller that uses external feedback to establish integral action. If the derivative time TD is set to 0.00, the derivative section is eliminated.

The gain for this controller is fixed at a value of 1.00. While the displayed gain can be changed, it will not affect the controller.

Equations

\[ O = \frac{GE + F}{TI_s + 1} \]

AUTO WHEN OUTPUT O IS CONNECTED TO FEEDBACK F

\[ O = \pm PG[P(1+\{TDs/(TD/DG[S+1])\}-S)] \frac{1}{1/TI_s} \]

MANUAL \quad O = F

Action

This parameter is used to set the controller as direct or reverse acting.

PG, TI, TD, DG, MR, and MR Tracking

These parameters are used to tune the controller. The controller must be tuned specifically for each application. The use of each of these parameters is described above under the Controller Type parameter. These values can be edited on-line through the Quick Access Key menu of the HART Communicator.

A.10 A/M TRANSFER BLOCK

The A/M Transfer Block is used to configure the A/M switching features of the controller. The Block’s software provides a single pole, double throw switch function. When in automatic mode, the controller output is passed to the Output Block. When in manual, the manual value is passed to the Output Block. When in manual, the SP will track the process to avoid bumps when switching from manual to automatic if the tracking setpoint parameter in the Setpoint Track and Hold Block is set to “Yes.”

A/M switching can be initiated from the Quick Access Key Menu of the HART Communicator or through the use of the local magnetic switches (see Section 6). A/M Transfer Block parameters are listed below; a description of each parameter then follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Power-Up Mode</td>
<td>Automatic/Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic Mode Only</td>
<td>Yes/No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power-Up Valve</td>
<td>-1.0 to 110%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Power-Up Mode

This parameter is used to configure the mode in which the controller will power-up. If automatic is selected, the Power-Up Setpoint value from the Setpoint Track and Hold Block is used as the SP and the controller will be initialized to automatic mode. If manual is selected, the Power-Up Valve value within this block is used as the output and the controller is initialized to manual mode.

Automatic Mode Only

If this parameter is configured to “Yes,” the controller cannot be switched to manual mode. The controller will be initialized to automatic at power-up regardless of the Power-Up Mode parameter.

Power-Up Valve

The power-up valve is the manual power-up value used if the controller is powered up in manual mode. On-line valve adjustments may be made using the HART Communicator via the Quick Access Key Menu. This value may also be edited via the local magnetic switches as described in Section 6.

A.11 OUTPUT BLOCK

The Output Block converts the internal digital signal it receives into a 4-20 mA analog output signal. The input to the block represents either the actual 4-20 mA process variable or the valve signal depending on the configuration of the Controller Block. In digital mode the transmitter output is a constant 4 mA. The Output Block parameter is listed below and then described.

Failsafe Level..........................Lo, Hi, or Last Value

Failsafe Level

This parameter specifies the value to which the transmitter output will go if an error is detected while the transmitter is performing its self-test program. This value may be set at Lo (3.85mA), Hi (22.5mA), or Last Value (transmitter output immediately before entering failsafe mode).
B.0 APPENDIX B - HAZARDOUS AREA INSTALLATION

This Appendix presents wiring and barrier selection information for installation of a Model Series 340 Transmitter in a hazardous location. Refer to the barrier list below, the barrier manufacturer's installation instructions, and the following pages when installing or servicing a transmitter in a hazardous location.

The following barriers have been tested with the Model 340:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BARRIER MANUFACTURER AND MODEL</th>
<th>BARRIER TYPE</th>
<th>FOR USE WITH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stahl 9001/51-280-091-14</td>
<td>Active/Dual Channel</td>
<td>XTC to LIL or HFM*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stahl 9001/01-280-100-10</td>
<td>Passive/Dual Channel</td>
<td>XTC to SAM*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTL 787S</td>
<td>Dual Channel</td>
<td>XTC to LIL or HFM*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTL 728</td>
<td>Dual Channel</td>
<td>XTC to SAM*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* LIL - Local Instrument Link station (e.g., Model 352, Model 385), HFM - APACS™ HART Fieldbus Module, SAM - APACS Standard Analog Module

Other barriers from these and other manufacturers can provide the required protection. The installer should carefully select barriers based on the required protection, loop wiring, manufacturer’s barrier performance data, and the data in the figures on the next two pages.

The following drawing are provided:

- 15032-3401 FM/CSA Control Drawing
- 15032-3409 SAA Control Drawing
**Hazardous (Classified) Location**

Zone 0 Group IIC or
Class I, Division 1, Groups A, B, C, D
Class II, Division 1, Groups E, F, G
Class III, Division 1

---

**Non Hazardous Location**

---

**General Notes:**

- All equipment in the loop must be approved by an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.
- Associated apparatus and control room equipment may be located in division 2 if so approved.
- The installation must be in accordance with the National Electrical Code or Canadian Electrical Code and ANSI/ISA-RP12.6.

**Model 340**

- $V_{\text{max}}, U_i = 30 \text{ V}$
- $I_{\text{max}}, I_i = 180 \text{ mA}$
- $C_i = 10.4 \text{ nF}$
- $L_i = 0 \text{ mH}$
- $P_i = 1 \text{ Watt}$

---

**Other Approved Intrinsically Safe Equipment**

- $V_{\text{max}}, U_i \geq 30 \text{ V}$
- $I_{\text{max}}, I_i \geq 180 \text{ mA}$
- $C_i = C_{\text{other equipment}}$
- $L_i = L_{\text{other equipment}}$

---

**Associated Apparatus**

- $10 \text{ V} \leq V_t \text{ or } V_{oc} \text{ or } U_o \leq 30 \text{ V}$
- $I_{sc} \text{ or } I_t \text{ or } I_o \leq 180 \text{ mA}$
- $L_a \text{ or } I_o \geq L_{\text{cable}} + L_{\text{other equipment}}$
- $C_a \text{ or } C_o \geq 10.4 \text{ nF} + C_{\text{cable}} + C_{\text{other equipment}}$

**Control Room Equipment**

- Must not use or generate in excess of $250 \text{ V rms or DC. (Um = 250 V)}$

---

**Model 340**

- Up to 15 different Model 340s may be connected to each associated apparatus in multi-drop mode.

---

**Moore Products Co.**

Spring House PA, USA 19477

---

**Control Drawing for**

**Model 340 Transmitter**

---

**Drawing No.**

15032-3401

---

**Title**

Control Drawing for Model 340 Transmitter

---

**Sheet 1 of 2**

---

May 1998
Associated Apparatus:

- Positive or negative, dual channel or supply return barrier may be used. Dual channel or supply return barriers combinations must be approved by the authority having jurisdiction. See Table 1 for acceptable combinations of barrier parameters. Stahl series 8903 (active current limiting) barriers must be used alone. They CANNOT be combined with any other barrier.

### Table 1: Combinations of Barrier Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Barrier 1</th>
<th>Barrier 2</th>
<th>Combined</th>
<th>Resistance Parameters</th>
<th>Acceptable Groups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volts</td>
<td>Ohms</td>
<td>Volts</td>
<td>Ohms</td>
<td>Voc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A,B,C,D</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>28.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>24.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>18.2</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>18.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>12.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A,B,C,D</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>23.0</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>18.2</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>18.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A,B,C,D</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>15.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A,B,C,D</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C,D</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C,D</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>28.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CSA Parametric Approval Parameters:

- Groups A, B, C, D
  - \( V_{max} = 10 \) V, \( R_{min} = 50 \) Ohms
  - \( V_{max} = 15 \) V, \( R_{min} = 100 \) Ohms
  - \( V_{max} = 23 \) V, \( R_{min} = 150 \) Ohms
  - \( V_{max} = 28 \) V, \( R_{min} = 300 \) Ohms
  - or Stahl series 8903: 54.4 mA, 52.5 Vmax

- Groups C, D only
  - \( V_{max} = 28 \) V, \( R_{min} = 175 \) Ohms
  - or Stahl series 8903: 68 mA, 31.5 Vmax

Wiring

- Wiring must be twisted, shielded pairs, 20 Awg or larger, solid or stranded.
- If the inductance and capacitance of the wiring are not known then the following parameters may be used:
  - Capacitance = 60 pF per foot.
  - Inductance = 0.20 \( \mu \)H per foot.

---

**Title**

Control Drawing for

Model 340 Transmitter

**Drawing No.**

15032-3401

**Sheet 2 of 2**

Moore Products Co.
Spring House PA, USA 19477

---

**Rev** | **Date** | **Details** | **Approved** |
---|---|---|---|
5 | 12 June 96 | Model 340 re-examined | J. Sweeney |
Hazardous (Classified) Location
Zone 0 Group IIC or

Model 340
- $U_i = 42$ V
- $I_i = 180$ mA
- $P_i = 1$ W
- $C_i = 10.4$ nF
- $L_i = 20$ uH

Other Approved Intrinsically Safe Equipment
- $U_i \geq 42$ V
- $I_i \geq 180$ mA,
- $C_i = $ Other equipment
- $L_i = $ Other equipment

Non Hazardous Location

Associated Apparatus
- $U_o \leq 42$ V
- $I_o \leq 180$ mA
- $P_o \leq 1$ W
- $L_o \geq 20$ uH + Lcable + Lother equipment
- $C_o \geq 10.4$ nF + Ccable + Cother equipment

Control Room Equipment
Must not use or generate in excess of
250 V rms or DC. ($U_m = 250$ V)

General Notes:
- All equipment in the loop must be approved by an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.
- Associated apparatus and control room equipment may be located in zone 2 if so approved.

Model 340:
- Up to 15 different Model 340s may be connected to each associated apparatus in multi-drop mode.

Associated Apparatus:
- Positive or negative, dual channel or supply return barrier may be used. Dual channel or supply return barriers combinations must be approved by the authority having jurisdiction. Stahl series 8903 (active current limiting) barriers must be used alone. They can NOT be combined with any other barrier.

Wiring:
- Wiring must be twisted, shielded pairs, 20 Awg or larger, solid or stranded.
- If the inductance and capacitance of the wiring are not known then the following parameters may be used:
  - Capacitance = 60 pF per foot.
  - Inductance = 0.20 uH per foot.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rev</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Approved</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>4 April 97</td>
<td>Model 340 re-examined</td>
<td>J. Sweeney</td>
<td>Control Drawing for Model 340 Transmitter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SAA Certified</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Moore Products Co.
Spring House PA, USA 19477

Drawing No. 15032-3409 Sheet 1 of 1

May 1998
C.0 TRANSMITTER CONFIGURATION DOCUMENTATION

HOW TO USE THIS APPENDIX

Use this appendix to document a transmitter configuration. The transmitter may be on-site or be a pending purchase. Make additional copies of this appendix as necessary. Clearly record the needed data as follows:

On-Site Transmitter Configuration Record

1. Copy transmitter nameplate information onto the simulated nameplate on the next page.

2. Enter Customer Name and P.O. Number information in the box at the bottom of the next page.

3. Record the transmitter’s configuration data in the last column of the table on pages C3 to C5.

Data for Factory Configuration at Time of Purchase

1. Write the transmitter model number and tag on the simulated nameplate on the next page. Other information is factory supplied at time of manufacture.

2. Enter Customer Name and P.O. Number information in the box at the bottom of the next page.

3. Record the desired configuration data on pages C3 to C5.

4. Attach a copy of these pages to your purchase order. Keep a copy for your files.

Subsequent pages contain the following information for each function block: name, parameter(s), default(s), and blank space(s) to record specific transmitter data.
TRANSMITTER CONFIGURATION RECORD

MOORE XTC™
TRANSMITTER-CONTROLLER

MODEL
B/M
SERIAL#
SPAN LIMITS
MWP
FCTRY CAL
TAG

Approvals and Certifications Area

For Factory Configuration

Please enter your name and transmitter purchase order number if providing information for factory configuration of a transmitter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Customer Name:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer P.O. Number:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Sales Order Number below will be entered by Moore Products Co.

<p>| Moore Products Co. Sales Order Number: |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARAMETER</th>
<th>RANGE OF VALUES</th>
<th>DEFAULT VALUE</th>
<th>DESIRED VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sensor Input Block</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measured Variable Units</td>
<td>inH₂O, inHg, ftH₂O, mmH₂O, mmHg, PSI, BAR, mBAR, g/sq cm, kg/sq cm, PA, kPA, Torr, Atm</td>
<td>inH₂O (Range A, B, D)</td>
<td>PSI (Range F, G)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measured Variable Range Lo</td>
<td>-999999 to 999999</td>
<td>0 (Range B, D, F, G)</td>
<td>-1 (Range A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measured Variable Range Hi</td>
<td>-999999 to 999999</td>
<td>1 (Range A)</td>
<td>10 (Range B)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100 (Range D, F)</td>
<td>1000 (Range G)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damping Time Constant</td>
<td>0 to 30 Seconds</td>
<td>1 Second</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfer Function</td>
<td>Linear, x^{1/2}, x^{3/2}, x^{5/2}</td>
<td>Linear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfer Function Cutoff</td>
<td>0 to 30 %</td>
<td>4 %</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zero Dropout</td>
<td>0 to 30 %</td>
<td>0 %</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Characterizer</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characterizer On/Off</td>
<td>On/Off</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characterizer Position</td>
<td>Transmitter Output/Controller Output</td>
<td>TRANSMITTER OUTPUT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X0</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X1</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>10.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X2</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>20.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X3</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>30.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X4</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>40.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X5</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>50.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X6</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>60.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X7</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>70.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X8</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>80.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X9</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>90.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X10</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>100.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y0</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARAMETER</td>
<td>RANGE OF VALUES</td>
<td>DEFAULT VALUE</td>
<td>DESIRED VALUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y1</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>10.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y2</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>20.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y3</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>30.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y4</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>40.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y5</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>50.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y6</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>60.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y7</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>70.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y8</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>80.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y9</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>90.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y10</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>100.00%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Totalizer</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fullscale Value</td>
<td>0.001 to 19999</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timebase</td>
<td>SEC/MIN/HR/DAY/WK</td>
<td>MIN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiplier</td>
<td>0.001 to 19999</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zero Dropout</td>
<td>0.0 to 30.0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count Units</td>
<td>4-Character ASCII</td>
<td>CNTS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Display</td>
<td>Enable/Disable</td>
<td>DISABLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Operator Display</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process Variable Range Lo</td>
<td>-19999 to 19999</td>
<td>0.0000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process Variable Range Hi</td>
<td>-19999 to 19999</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process Variable Units</td>
<td>4-Character ASCII</td>
<td>PRCT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Rerange</td>
<td>Enable or Disable</td>
<td>DISABLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Display Code</td>
<td>MV, PV, %, MV/PV/%</td>
<td>MV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autotoggle</td>
<td>On/Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toggle Time</td>
<td>1 to 30 seconds</td>
<td>1 second</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transmitter ID</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tag</td>
<td>8-Character ASCII</td>
<td>PT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Descriptor</td>
<td>16-Character ASCII</td>
<td>XTC TRANSMITTER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>32-Character ASCII</td>
<td>MOORE PRODUCTS CO.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARAMETER</td>
<td>RANGE OF VALUES</td>
<td>DEFAULT VALUE</td>
<td>DESIRED VALUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date Format</td>
<td>DD/MM/YY</td>
<td>[Date transmitter manufactured]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Serial Number (8-digit)</td>
<td>0 to 16777215</td>
<td>[Device S/N on nameplate]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polling Address</td>
<td>0-15</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alarm</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm 1 Enable/Disable</td>
<td></td>
<td>DISABLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm 1 Setpoint</td>
<td>-9999999 to 9999999</td>
<td>0.0000%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm 1 Type</td>
<td>High/Low</td>
<td>LOW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm 2 Enable/Disable</td>
<td></td>
<td>DISABLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm 2 Setpoint</td>
<td>-9999999 to 9999999</td>
<td>0.0000%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm 2 Type</td>
<td>High/Low</td>
<td>LOW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-Clearing NAKS On/Off</td>
<td>On/Off</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm Out of Service On/Off</td>
<td>On/Off</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setpoint Track and Hold</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracking Setpoint</td>
<td>Yes/No</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power-Up Setpoint</td>
<td>-9999999 to 9999999</td>
<td>50.000%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Controller</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controller Status On/Off</td>
<td>On/Off</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controller Type</td>
<td>PID/PD/ID</td>
<td>PID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Reverse/Direct</td>
<td>REVERSE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportional Gain (PD and PID)</td>
<td>0.01 to 100.0</td>
<td>1.0000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Integral</td>
<td>0.01 to 1000 min./repeat</td>
<td>100.00 MIN/REPEAT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Derivative</td>
<td>0.01 to 100.0 min.</td>
<td>0.0000 MIN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derivative Gain</td>
<td>1.00 to 30.00</td>
<td>10.0000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Reset (PD only)</td>
<td>0.0 to 100.0%</td>
<td>0.0000%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Reset Tracking (PD only)</td>
<td>No/Yes</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A/M Transfer</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power-Up Mode</td>
<td>Automatic/Manual</td>
<td>AUTOMATIC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARAMETER</td>
<td>RANGE OF VALUES</td>
<td>DEFAULT VALUE</td>
<td>DESIRED VALUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic Mode Only</td>
<td>Yes/No</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power-Up Valve</td>
<td>-1.0 to 110%</td>
<td>0.0000%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Output</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failsafe Level</td>
<td>Lo, Hi, or Last Value</td>
<td>LO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
D.0 APPENDIX D - ELEVATION AND SUPPRESSION CORRECTIONS

When installing a transmitter to measure liquid level, configuration of the Sensor Input Block often must include an adjustment for one of two conditions introduced by the mounting arrangement:

- Elevated Span - The Lower Range Value (LRV) of the transmitter needs to be configured above “0.” See Figure D-1.

- Suppressed Span - The LRV of the transmitter needs to be configured below “0.” See Figure D-2.

A brief discussion of how to make adjustments for elevation and suppression follows. Then two examples of the calculations needed to determine configuration parameters are given. Finally, a brief procedure that does not involve calculations is provided.

D.1 HOW ADJUSTMENT IS MADE

Because the Model 340 can handle elevation and suppression simply by setting parameters in the Sensor Input Block, it is not necessary to introduce mechanical measures, such as installing piping backwards or adding additional hardware.

The range of the transmitter can be set anywhere, forward or reverse acting, as long as the following criteria are met:

$$\text{LRL } \text{LRV } \text{URL}$$

$$\text{LRL } \text{URV } \text{URL}$$

$$\text{Span} = [\text{URV} - \text{LRV}] \quad \text{Min Span}$$
Note that the URL (Upper Range Limit), LRL (Lower Range Limit), and Min Span are transmitter dependent.

**D.2 ELEVATION CALCULATION EXAMPLE**

Figure D-3 shows a sample transmitter installation.

1. Calculate the differential pressure as follows.
   \[
   \text{Pressure}_{\text{DP}} = (H \times \text{SpG})_{\text{High Side}} - (H \times \text{SpG})_{\text{Low Side}}
   \]
   where \(H = \text{Height}\)

2. Calculate the LRV when the tank is empty.
   \[
   \text{LRV} = (120 \times 1.0)_{\text{High Side}} - (0 \times 1.0)_{\text{Low Side}}
   \]
   \[
   \text{LRV} = +120 \text{ inH}_2\text{O}
   \]

3. Calculate the URV.
   \[
   \text{URV} = \text{LRV} + \text{Span}
   \]
   \[
   \text{URV} = +120 + 100
   \]
   \[
   \text{URV} = 220 \text{ inH}_2\text{O}
   \]

Therefore, transmitter range should be 120 to 220 inH\text{O}.

**D.3 SUPPRESSION CALCULATION EXAMPLE**

Figure D-4 shows a sample transmitter installation.

1. Calculate the differential pressure as follows.
   \[
   \text{Pressure}_{\text{DP}} = (H \times \text{SpG})_{\text{High Side}} - (H \times \text{SpG})_{\text{Low Side}}
   \]
   where \(H = \text{Height}\)

2. Calculate the LRV when the tank is empty.
   \[
   \text{LRV} = (0 \times 1.0)_{\text{High Side}} - (100 \times 1.0)_{\text{Low Side}}
   \]
   \[
   \text{LRV} = -100 \text{ inH}_2\text{O}
   \]

3. Calculate the URV.
   \[
   \text{URV} = \text{LRV} + \text{Span}
   \]
   \[
   \text{URV} = -100 + 100
   \]
   \[
   \text{URV} = 0 \text{ inH}_2\text{O}
   \]

Therefore, transmitter range should be -100 to 0 inH\text{O}.
D.4 RECOMMENDED METHOD FOR 340 TRANSMITTERS

An alternative to making the above calculations and entering derived values into the Sensor Input Block is to shift the span directly using the HART Communicator while adjusting the process levels.

1. Range the transmitter using the HART Communicator as for a zero-based span (e.g., 0-100 inH₂O).

2. Install the transmitter on the process.

3. Fill the impulse pipe (wet legs) to the transmitter, but maintain the process at 0 (e.g., empty tank).

4. Perform one of the following:
   - Use the Active Input feature of the Communicator (access the Online/Configuration Xmtr/Sensor Input Menu) to set the current pressure as the LRV. The configured span will be retained.
   - Use the Z magnetic switch to set the current pressure as the LRV. The configured span will be retained.

This completes the procedure.
E.0 APPENDIX E - CENELEC EEX D INSTALLATIONS

The information in this appendix applies only to transmitters with a CENELEC EEx d [ia] ia approval shipped after 12/1/96. UM340-1 sections amended by this appendix are:

Section 4.3.5 Power Supply Requirements

Section 9 Model Designations and Specifications

MODEL DESIGNATION - The letter ‘M’ appears in the 15th (last) position in the model number stamped on the permanent instrument nameplate. An example of a valid model number is 340DDBHAAB5N12M.

HAZARDOUS AREA CLASSIFICATION - CENELEC, EEx d [ia] ia, IIC T6, T5

The Model 340 with EEx d [ia] ia certification is suitable for use in Zone 1 explosive atmospheres only. The basic protection technique is a flameproof enclosure (“d”) with an intrinsic safety barrier (“[ia]”) incorporated into the terminal board. This built-in barrier insures both the electronics module and sensor are intrinsically safe (“ia”). This barrier will cause errors in the 4-20 mA signal if the instrument is operated outside the specified operating range.

WARNING

The model 340 with EEx d [ia] ia certification is only suitable for use in Zone 1 explosive atmospheres when connected to equipment that does not generate or use more than 250 Vac rms or DC.

POWER SUPPLY REQUIREMENTS - A special terminal board is installed to protect the sensor assembly from excessive current draw during fault conditions. The following specifications apply.

Minimum Terminal-to-Terminal Compliance Voltage: ............ 16.5 Vdc

Maximum Terminal-to-Terminal Compliance Voltage: ........... 26 Vdc

Maximum Load (ohms): .......................................................... See graph on next page

Applying a terminal-to-terminal voltage greater than 26 Vdc can damage terminal board components. Calculate the terminal-to-terminal voltage for your loop as follows.

Max. T-T Voltage = power supply voltage - (0.00385)(total loop resistance)

Min. T-T Voltage = power supply voltage - (0.0225)(total loop resistance)
Select a power supply that allows the terminal-to-terminal voltage to remain between 16.5 and 26 Vdc over the entire loop current range (typically, 3.85 mA to 22.5 mA).

INSTALLATION - Correct voltage polarity must be applied to transmitter terminals. Applying a reverse polarity voltage can damage the terminal board requiring it to be replaced. See the wiring diagrams in UM340-1, Section 4 Installation for correct voltage polarity.

Refer to UM340-1 for all other information concerning an EEx d [ia] ia certified Model 340.

NOTE: Shaded area shows the operating region for both analog and HART modes.
F.0 APPENDIX F - STATIC PRESSURE CORRECTION

The correction method used to achieve the static pressure specification in Section 9 is to reduce the calibrated span by 0.9% for each 1000 psi of static pressure. An example follows.

Assumptions:

- Required Calibration = 0-100 in H\textsubscript{2}O
- Static (line) Pressure = 2000 psi

Correction:

- Required Correction = \((0.9\%/1000 \text{ psi}) \times 2000 \text{ psi} = 1.8\%\)
- Actual Calibration = 0-98.2 in H\textsubscript{2}O
WARRANTY

The Company warrants all equipment manufactured by it and bearing its nameplate, and all repairs made by it, to be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service. If any part of the equipment herein described, and sold by the Company, proves to be defective in material or workmanship and if such part is within twelve months from date of shipment from the Company's factory, returned to such factory, transportation charges prepaid, and if the same is found by the Company to be defective in material or workmanship, it will be replaced or repaired, free of charge, f.o.b. Company's factory. The Company assumes no liability for the consequence of its use or misuse by Purchaser, his employees or others. A defect in the meaning of this warranty in any part of said equipment shall not, when such part is capable of being renewed, repaired or replaced, operate to condemn such equipment. This warranty is expressly in lieu of all other warranties, guaranties, obligations, or liabilities, expressed or implied by the Company or its representatives. All statutory or implied warranties other than title are hereby expressly negated and excluded.

Warranty repair or replacement requires the equipment to be returned to one of the following addresses.

Equipment manufactured or sold by MOORE PRODUCTS CO.:

    MOORE PRODUCTS CO.
    Sumneytown Pike
    Spring House, PA 19477

Equipment manufactured or sold by MOORE PRODUCTS CO. (CANADA) INC.:

    MOORE PRODUCTS CO. (CANADA) INC.
    2 km West of Mississauga Rd. Hwy. 7
    Brampton, Ontario, Canada

Equipment manufactured or sold by MOORE PRODUCTS CO. (UK) LTD.:

    MOORE PRODUCTS CO. (UK) LTD
    Copse Road
    Lufton, Yeovil
    Somerset, BA22 8RN, ENGLAND

The warranty will be null and void if repair is attempted without authorization by a member of the MOORE PRODUCTS CO. Service Department.
XTC™ PRESSURE TRANSMITTER-CONTROLLERS
MODELS 340A, D, F AND G

Enclosure Assembly Parts for All Models

101, Sensor Assembly for Models 340A and G except those with Tantalam Diaphragms.

See above for Enclosure Parts.

101, Sensor Assembly with Flange and, as specified, Extension, for Model 340F.

See above for Enclosure Parts.

MOORE PRODUCTS CO., Spring House, PA 19477-0900
An ISO 9001 registered company.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PART NO.</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>CONTENTS AND (DRAWING ITEM NUMBER(S))</th>
<th>QTY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16275-40</td>
<td>Upgrade Kit</td>
<td>Complete Enclosure Assembly with:</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1/2-14 NPT Electrical Entrance (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Electronics Module (8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Terminal Board (5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Crenelated Enclosure Caps with O-Rings (3,4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O-Ring (105)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Magnetic Screwdriver (1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No Smart Display.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For upgrading an earlier Model 340</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>transmitter having the larger, pushbutton-style enclosure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-41</td>
<td>Upgrade Kit</td>
<td>Complete Enclosure Assembly with:</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M20 x 1.5 Electrical Entrance (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Electronics Module (8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Terminal Board (5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Flush Enclosure Caps with O-Rings (3,4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O-Ring (105)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Magnetic Screwdriver (1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No Smart Display.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For upgrading an earlier Model 340</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>transmitter having the larger, pushbutton-style enclosure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-45</td>
<td>Upgrade Kit</td>
<td>Same as 16275-41 but includes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Smart Display and Flush Enclosure Cap with Sightglass.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-80</td>
<td>Upgrade Kit</td>
<td>Same as 16275-40 but includes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Smart Display and Crenelated Enclosure Cap with Sightglass.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-66</td>
<td>Enclosure Kit</td>
<td>Enclosure (6) with 1/2-14 NPT Electrical Entrance with Ground Screws and Feedthrus only</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-67</td>
<td>Enclosure Kit</td>
<td>Enclosure (6) with M20 x 1.5 Electrical Entrance with Ground Screws and Feedthrus only</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-68</td>
<td>Display Kit</td>
<td>Includes Smart Display (9) and Crenelated Enclosure Cap with Sightglass (3) and O-Ring (4). For adding a Smart Display to a transmitter.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-69</td>
<td>Display Kit</td>
<td>Includes Smart Display (9) and Flush Enclosure Cap with Sightglass (3) and O-Ring (4). For adding a Smart Display to a transmitter.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-400</td>
<td>Hardware Repair Kit</td>
<td>Magnetic Screwdriver (1)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O-Ring for Enclosure Cap, 2.86&quot; ID. (4)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pipe Plug, Allen, Electrical Entrance, ½-NPT (7)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TFE/PTFE Washer, 1.75&quot; dia., Capsule to End Cap, Model 340D and Models 340A and G with Tantalum Diaphragms (104)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Screw, Terminal Board and Internal and External Grounds, 8/32 x 3/8 Slotted TORX Pan Hd. (201)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lockwasher, Enclosure Grounds, #8 External Tooth (202)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Wire Clamp (203)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Screw, Smart Display/Electronics Module Mounting, 4-40 x 0.875 Slotted TORX Pan Hd (204)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Screw, Enclosure Stop/Retaining, 8-32 x ¼ Skt. Hd. Cap (205)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lockwasher, #8 Internal Tooth (206)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Set Screw, Enclosure Neck, 10-32 x 3/8 Cup Pt. (207)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TFE/PTFE Washer, 1.1&quot; dia., Process Connection Block (NS)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART NO.</td>
<td>DESCRIPTION</td>
<td>CONTENTS AND (DRAWING ITEM NUMBER(S))</td>
<td>QTY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Capacitor, Feedthru, 5000pF; user supplied Loctite® or equivalent required for installation (NS)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-401</td>
<td>Capsule Repair Kit, SST</td>
<td>Vent/Drain Plug and Screw, ¼, SST (102)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pipe Plug, ¼-NPT, SST, Models 340D and F and Models 340A and G with Tantalum Diaphragms (103)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O-Ring, Capsule Neck (105)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TFE/PTFE Washer, 1.75” dia., Capsule to End Cap, Model 340D and Models 340A and G with Tantalum Diaphragms (104)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-402</td>
<td>Capsule Repair Kit, Hastelloy</td>
<td>Vent/Drain Plug and Screw, ¼, Hastelloy-C (102)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pipe Plug, ¼-NPT, Hastelloy-C, Models 340D and F and Models 340A and G with Tantalum Diaphragms (103)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O-Ring, Capsule Neck (105)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TFE/PTFE Washer, 1.75” dia., Capsule to End Cap, Model 340D and Models 340A and G with Tantalum Diaphragms (104)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-403*</td>
<td>O-Ring/Gasket Kit</td>
<td>O-Ring for Enclosure Cap (4)</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TFE/PTFE Washer, 1.75” dia., Capsule to End Cap, Model 340D and Models 340A and G with Tantalum Diaphragms (104)</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O-Ring, Capsule Neck (105)</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TFE/PTFE Washer, 1.1” dia., Process Connection Block (NS)</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-404</td>
<td>Electronics Module</td>
<td>Circuit Board Assembly Mounted in the Plastic Cup (8)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-405</td>
<td>Terminal Board Kit</td>
<td>Standard Terminal Board (5)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-406</td>
<td>Terminal Board Kit</td>
<td>Transient Suppressor Terminal Board (5)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-408</td>
<td>Service Kit, Monel</td>
<td>Plug, Flats, ¼-28M, Monel (102)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Plug, Vent, Hex, ¼ NPT, Monel (102)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Plug, Flats, ¼ NPT, Monel (102)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O-Ring, Capsule Neck (105)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TFE/PTFE Washer, 1.75” dia., Capsule to End Cap, Model 340D and Models 340A and G with Tantalum Diaphragms (104)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-411</td>
<td>Magnetic Screwdriver</td>
<td>Magnetic Screwdriver for XTC (1)</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-412</td>
<td>Enclosure Cap Wrench</td>
<td>Cap Wrench (2)</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-471</td>
<td>Enclosure Cap Kit, Crenelated</td>
<td>Crenelated Enclosure Cap with Sightglass and O-Ring (3,4)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16275-472</td>
<td>Enclosure Cap Kit, Flush</td>
<td>Flush Enclosure Cap with Sightglass and O-Ring (3,4)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16294-1</td>
<td>Smart Display Kit</td>
<td>Replacement Smart Display (9)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART NO.</td>
<td>DESCRIPTION</td>
<td>CONTENTS AND (DRAWING ITEM NUMBER(S))</td>
<td>QTY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>Sensor Assembly</td>
<td>For Model 340A, D, F, or G with capsule end caps(s), vent(s)/ drain(s), and bolts (101) - Refer to UM340-1, Model Designation and Specification section and configure a model number that includes the following: ♦ basic model number ♦ body parts ♦ input range ♦ fill fluid ♦ output ♦ all other selections are N ♦ process diaphragm Sample Model Number: 340D B D S AA B N N N N N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15965-659</td>
<td>Connection Blocks</td>
<td>Process Connection Block Kit, Dual, SS, for Model 340D (NS)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15965-660</td>
<td>Connection Blocks</td>
<td>Process Connection Block Kit, Dual, Hastelloy, for Model 340D (NS)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15965-1218</td>
<td>Connection Blocks</td>
<td>Process Connection Block Kit, Single, SS, for Models 340A, F, and G (NS)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15965-1219</td>
<td>Connection Blocks</td>
<td>Process Connection Block Kit, Single, Hastelloy, for Models 340A, F, and G (NS)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15965-53</td>
<td>Connection Blocks</td>
<td>Process Connection Block Washer (NS)</td>
<td>1 ea.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

- Refer to User’s Manual UM340-1 for accessory part numbers and for servicing a transmitter.
- See exploded views on first page for transmitter disassembly and for item reference numbers.
- An * identifies a recommended on-hand spare part. Include transmitter nameplate information when ordering spare or replacement parts.
- NS - Not shown in exploded views.
For prompt, personal attention to your instrumentation and control needs, contact the Moore Products Co. location nearest you. Information on other Moore Products Co. representatives in your area is available from these regional locations.

**AUSTRALIA**  
Moore Products Co.  
(Australia) Pty. Ltd.  
Federation Business Centre  
Unit 27, 198 Young Street  
Waterloo, NSW, 2017  
Tel: +61 2 9319 4877  
Fax: +61 2 9318 1743

**THE BENELUX**  
Moore Products Co. B.V.  
Wagenmakerstraat 3  
2984 BD RIDDERKERK  
Tel: +31 180 461111  
Fax: +31 180 461132

**CANADA**  
Moore Products Co. (Canada) Inc.  
P.O. Box 370  
Brampton, Ontario L6V 2L3  
Tel: +1 905 457 9638  
Fax: +1 905 457 4182

**FRANCE**  
Factory Systemes  
22, rue Vladimir Jankelevitch  
Emerainville  
77437 Marne la Vallee cedex 2  
France  
Tel: +33 1 64 61 68 68  
Fax: +33 1 64 61 67 34

**INDIA**  
Moore Controls, Pvt. Ltd.  
34/35, MIDC Estate  
“H” Block  
Pimpri, Pune 411 018  
Tel: +91 212 770171  
Fax: +91 212 777049

**ITALY**  
Moore Products Co. (Italia) S.r.l.  
Via S. Aleramo 2  
20063 Cernusco sul Naviglio (Milano)  
Tel: +39 02 929054 1  
Fax: +39 02 92905454

**MEXICO**  
Moore Products de Mexico S.A. de C.V.  
Tintoreto No. 32-302  
Col. Nonoalco Mixcoac  
Mexico, D.F.  
C.P. 03910  
Tel: +52 5 611 9858  
+52 5 615 1948  
+52 5 615 0262  
+52 5 615 0238  
Fax: +52 5 611 4541

**SOUTH AFRICA**  
Moore Controls S.A. (Pty.) Ltd.  
Moore House  
39 Monza Place  
Kyalami Business Park  
Midrand  
Tel: +27 11 466 1673/9  
Fax: +27 11 466 1618

**SINGAPORE**  
Moore Products Co. (S) Pte. Ltd.  
70 Bendemeer Road  
#03-01 Hiap Huat House  
Singapore 339940  
Tel: +65 299 6051  
Fax: +65 299 6053

**UNITED KINGDOM**  
Moore Products Co. (U.K.) Ltd.  
Copse Road  
Lufton Industrial Estate  
Yeovil, Somerset BA22 8RN  
Tel: +44 1935 706262  
Fax: +44 1935 706969

**UNITED STATES**  
Moore Process Automation Solutions  
1201 Sumneytown Pike  
Spring House, PA 19477-0900  
Tel: +1 215 646 7400  
Fax: +1 215 283 6358

---

PRINTED ON POST-CONSUMER RECYCLED PAPER.  
JULY 1998